

1                   **SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND POSITIVELY**  
2                                   **BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY**  
3                   **HEATED FLOWLINES FOR PRODUCTION OF SUBSEA HYDROCARBONS**  
4  
5  
6

7                   **PRIORITY FROM U.S. PATENT APPLICATIONS**  
8  
9

10           The present application is a continuation-in-part  
11           (C.I.P.) application of co-pending U.S. Patent Application  
12           Serial No. 10/729,509, filed on December 4, 2003, that is  
13           entitled "High Power Umbilicals for Electric Flowline  
14           Immersion Heating of Produced Hydrocarbons", an entire copy  
15           of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
16

17           Serial No. 10/729,509 is a continuation-in-part (C.I.P.)  
18           application of co-pending U.S. Patent Application Serial  
19           No. 10/223,025, filed August 15, 2002, that is entitled  
20           "High Power Umbilicals for Subterranean Electric Drilling  
21           Machines and Remotely Operated Vehicles", an entire copy of  
22           which is incorporated herein by reference. Serial No.  
23           10/223,025 was published on February 20, 2003, having  
24           Publication Number US 2003/0034177 A1.  
25

26           Applicant claims priority from U.S. Patent Applications  
27           Serial No. 10/729,509 and Serial No. 10/223,025.  
28  
29

30                   **PRIORITY FROM U.S. PROVISIONAL PATENT APPLICATIONS**  
31  
32

33           The present application also relates to Provisional  
34           Patent Application Number 60/455,657, filed on March 18,

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND**  
**POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 2003, that is entitled "Four SDCI Application Notes  
2 Concerning Subsea Umbilicals and Construction Systems",  
3 an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
4

5 The present application also relates to Provisional  
6 Patent Application Number 60/504,359, filed on September 20,  
7 2003, that is entitled "Additional Disclosure on Long  
8 Immersion Heater Systems", an entire copy of which is  
9 incorporated herein by reference.  
10

11 The present application also relates to Provisional  
12 Patent Application Number 60/523,894, filed on November 20,  
13 2003, that is entitled "More Disclosure on Long Immersion  
14 Heater Systems", an entire copy of which is incorporated  
15 herein by reference.  
16

17 The present application further relates to Provisional  
18 Patent Application Number 60/532,023, filed on December 22,  
19 2003, that is entitled "Neutrally Buoyant Flowlines for  
20 Subsea Oil and Gas Production", an entire copy of which is  
21 incorporated herein by reference.  
22

23 And finally, the present application further relates to  
24 Provisional Patent Application Number 60/535,395, filed on  
25 January 10, 2004, that is entitled "Additional Disclosure on  
26 Smart Shuttles and Subterranean Electric Drilling Machines",  
27 an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
28

29 Applicant claims priority from the above U.S.  
30 Provisional Patent Applications No. 60/455,657,  
31 No. 60/504,359, No. 60/523,894, No. 60/532,023, and  
32 No. 60/535,395.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 CROSS-REFERENCES TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

2  
3 This application relates to Provisional Patent  
4 Application Number 60/313,654 filed on August 19, 2001,  
5 that is entitled "Smart Shuttle Systems", an entire copy of  
6 which is incorporated herein by reference.  
7

8 This application also relates to Provisional Patent  
9 Application Number 60/353,457 filed on January 31, 2002, that  
10 is entitled "Additional Smart Shuttle Systems", an entire  
11 copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
12

13 This application further relates to Provisional Patent  
14 Application Number 60/367,638 filed on March 26, 2002, that  
15 is entitled "Smart Shuttle Systems and Drilling Systems", an  
16 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
17

18 And yet further, this application also relates the  
19 Provisional Patent Application Number 60/384,964 filed on  
20 June 3, 2002, that is entitled "Umbilicals for Well  
21 Conveyance Systems and Additional Smart Shuttles and Related  
22 Drilling Systems", an entire copy of which is incorporated  
23 herein by reference.  
24

25 This application also relates to Provisional Patent  
26 Application Number 60/432,045, filed on December 8, 2002,  
27 that is entitled "Pump Down Cement Float Valves for Casing  
28 Drilling, Pump Down Electrical Umbilicals, and Subterranean  
29 Electric Drilling Systems", an entire copy of which is  
30 incorporated herein by reference.  
31

32 And yet further, this application also relates to  
33 Provisional Patent Application Number 60/448,191, filed on  
34 February 18, 2003, that is entitled "Long Immersion Heater

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Systems", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by  
2 reference.

3  
4 Serial No. 10/223,025 claimed priority from the above  
5 Provisional Patent Application No. 60/313,654, No.  
6 60/353,457, No. 60/367,638 and No. 60/384,964, and applicant  
7 claims any relevant priority in the present application.

8  
9 Serial No. 10/729,509 claimed priority from various  
10 Provisional Patent Applications, including Provisional Patent  
11 Application No. 60/432,045, and 60/448,191, and applicant  
12 claims any relevant priority in the present application.

13  
14 The following applications are related to this  
15 application, but applicant does not claim priority from the  
16 following related applications.

17  
18 This application relates to Serial No. 09/375,479, filed  
19 August 16, 1999, having the title of "Smart Shuttles to  
20 Complete Oil and Gas Wells", that issued on February 20,  
21 2001, as U.S. Patent No. 6,189,621 B1, an entire copy of  
22 which is incorporated herein by reference.

23  
24 This application also relates to application Serial  
25 No. 09/487,197, filed January 19, 2000, having the title of  
26 "Closed-Loop System to Complete Oil and Gas Wells", that  
27 issued on June 4, 2002 as U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 B1,  
28 an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

29  
30 This application also relates to co-pending application  
31 Serial No. 10/162,302, filed June 4, 2002, having the title  
32 of "Closed-Loop Conveyance Systems for Well Servicing", an  
33 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



## Related PCT Applications

And yet further, this application also relates to co-pending PCT Application Serial Number PCT/US00/22095, filed August 9, 2000, having the title of "Smart Shuttles to Complete Oil and Gas Wells", that has International Publication Date of February 22, 2001 and International Publication Number WO 01/12946 A1, an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

This application further relates to PCT Patent Application Number PCT/US02/26066 filed on August 16, 2002, entitled "High Power Umbilicals for Subterranean Electric Drilling Machines and Remotely Operated Vehicles", that has International Publication Date of February 27, 2003, and has the International Publication Number WO 03/016671 A2, an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

This application further relates to PCT Patent Application Number PCT/US03/38615 filed on December 5, 2003, entitled "High Power Umbilicals for Electric Flowline Immersion Heating of Produced Hydrocarbons", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

## Related U.S. Disclosure Documents

This application further relates to disclosure in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 451,044, filed on February 8, 1999, that is entitled 'RE: -Invention Disclosure- "Drill Bit Having Monitors and Controlled Actuators"', an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

This application further relates to disclosure in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 458,978 filed on July 13, 1999 that

"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Rig-3

1 is entitled in part "RE: -INVENTION DISCLOSURE MAILED JULY  
2 13, 1999", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by  
3 reference.  
4

5 This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
6 Disclosure Document No. 475,681 filed on June 17, 2000 that  
7 is entitled in part "ROV Conveyed Smart Shuttle System  
8 Deployed by Workover Ship for Subsea Well Completion and  
9 Subsea Well Servicing", an entire copy of which is  
10 incorporated herein by reference.  
11

12 This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
13 Disclosure Document No. 496,050 filed on June 25, 2001 that  
14 is entitled in part "SDCI Drilling and Completion Patents and  
15 Technology and SDCI Subsea Re-Entry Patents and Technology",  
16 an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
17

18 This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
19 Disclosure Document No. 480,550 filed on October 2, 2000  
20 that is entitled in part "New Draft Figures for New Patent  
21 Applications", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein  
22 by reference.  
23

24 This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
25 Disclosure Document No. 493,141 filed on May 2, 2001 that is  
26 entitled in part "Casing Boring Machine with Rotating Casing  
27 to Prevent Sticking Using a Rotary Rig", an entire copy of  
28 which is incorporated herein by reference.  
29

30 This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
31 Disclosure Document No. 492,112 filed on April 12, 2001 that  
32 is entitled in part "Smart Shuttle™ Conveyed Drilling  
33 Systems", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by  
34 reference.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
2 Disclosure Document No. 495,112 filed on June 11, 2001 that  
3 is entitled in part "Liner/Drainhole Drilling Machine", an  
4 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
5

6           This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
7 Disclosure Document No. 494,374 filed on May 26, 2001 that is  
8 entitled in part "Continuous Casting Boring Machine", an  
9 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
10

11           This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
12 Disclosure Document No. 495,111 filed on June 11, 2001 that  
13 is entitled in part "Synchronous Motor Injector System", an  
14 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
15

16           And yet further, this application also relates to  
17 disclosure in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 497,719 filed on  
18 July 27, 2001 that is entitled in part "Many Uses for The  
19 Smart Shuttle™ and Well Locomotive™", an entire copy of which  
20 is incorporated herein by reference.  
21

22           This application further relates to disclosure in U.S.  
23 Disclosure Document No. 498,720 filed on August 17, 2001 that  
24 is entitled in part "Electric Motor Powered Rock Drill Bit  
25 Having Inner and Outer Counter-Rotating Cutters and Having  
26 Expandable/Retractable Outer Cutters to Drill Boreholes into  
27 Geological Formations", an entire copy of which is  
28 incorporated herein by reference.  
29

30           Still further, this application also relates to  
31 disclosure in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 499,136 filed on  
32 August 26, 2001, that is entitled in part 'Commercial System  
33 Specification PCP-ESP Power Section for Cased Hole Internal  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1       Conveyance "Large Well Locomotive"<sup>TM</sup>, an entire copy of which  
2       is incorporated herein by reference.

3  
4       And yet further, this application also relates to  
5       disclosure in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 516,982 filed on  
6       August 20, 2002, that is entitled "Feedback Control of RPM  
7       and Voltage of Surface Supply", an entire copy of which is  
8       incorporated herein by reference.

9  
10       And finally, this application also relates to disclosure  
11       in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 531,687 filed May 18, 2003,  
12       that is entitled "Specific Embodiments of Several SDCI  
13       Inventions", an entire copy of which is incorporated herein  
14       by reference.

15  
16       Various references are referred to in the above defined  
17       U.S. Disclosure Documents. For the purposes herein, the term  
18       "reference cited in applicant's U.S. Disclosure Documents"  
19       shall mean those particular references that have been  
20       explicitly listed and/or defined in any of applicant's above  
21       listed U.S. Disclosure Documents and/or in the attachments  
22       filed with those U.S. Disclosure Documents. Applicant  
23       explicitly includes herein by reference entire copies of each  
24       and every "reference cited in applicant's U.S. Disclosure  
25       Documents". To best knowledge of applicant, all copies of  
26       U.S. Patents that were ordered from commercial sources that  
27       were specified in the U.S. Disclosure Documents are in the  
28       possession of applicant at the time of the filing of the  
29       application herein.

#### 30 31                               Related U.S. Trademarks

32  
33       Various references are referred to in the above defined  
34       U.S. Disclosure Documents. For the purposes herein, the term

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 "reference cited in applicant's U.S. Disclosure Documents"  
2 shall mean those particular references that have been  
3 explicitly listed and/or defined in any of applicant's above  
4 listed U.S. Disclosure Documents and/or in the attachments  
5 filed with those U.S. Disclosure Documents. Applicant  
6 explicitly includes herein by reference entire copies of each  
7 and every "reference cited in applicant's U.S. Disclosure  
8 Documents". In particular, applicant includes herein by  
9 reference entire copies of each and every U.S. Patent cited  
10 in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 452648, including all its  
11 attachments, that was filed on March 5, 1999. To best  
12 knowledge of applicant, all copies of U.S. Patents that were  
13 ordered from commercial sources that were specified in the  
14 U.S. Disclosure Documents are in the possession of applicant  
15 at the time of the filing of the application herein.  
16

17 Applications for U.S. Trademarks have been filed in the  
18 USPTO for several terms used in this application.  
19 An application for the Trademark "Smart Shuttle™" was filed  
20 on February 14, 2001 that is Serial No. 76/213676, an entire  
21 copy of which is incorporated herein by reference. The term  
22 Smart Shuttle® is now a Registered Trademark. The "Smart  
23 Shuttle™" is also called the "Well Locomotive™". An  
24 application for the Trademark "Well Locomotive™" was filed on  
25 February 20, 2001 that is Serial Number 76/218211, an entire  
26 copy of which is incorporated herein by reference. The term  
27 "Well Locomotive" is now a Registered Trademark. An  
28 application for the Trademark of "Downhole Rig" was filed on  
29 June 11, 2001 that is Serial Number 76/274726, an entire copy  
30 of which is incorporated herein by reference. An application  
31 for the Trademark "Universal Completion Device™" was filed on  
32 July 24, 2001 that is Serial Number 76/293175, an entire copy  
33 of which is incorporated herein by reference. An application  
34 for the Trademark "Downhole BOP" was filed on August 17, 2001

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Rig-3**

1 that is Serial Number 76/305201, an entire copy of which is  
2 incorporated herein by reference.

3  
4 Accordingly, in view of the Trademark Applications, the  
5 term "smart shuttle" will be capitalized as "Smart Shuttle";  
6 the term "well locomotive" will be capitalized as "Well  
7 Locomotive"; the term "downhole rig" will be capitalized as  
8 "Downhole Rig"; the term "universal completion device" will  
9 be capitalized as "Universal Completion Device"; and the term  
10 "downhole bop" will be capitalized as "Downhole BOP".  
11  
12

### 13 BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

#### 14 1. Field of Invention

15  
16  
17  
18 The fundamental field of the invention relates  
19 to methods and apparatus that may be used to drill and  
20 complete wells at great lateral distances from a  
21 drill site. The invention may be used to reach any lateral  
22 distance from the surface drill site, from close to the  
23 drill site, to a maximum radial distance of at least 20 miles  
24 from the surface drill site. This is accomplished by using a  
25 near neutrally buoyant umbilical that is attached to a  
26 subterranean electric drilling machine. The near  
27 neutrally buoyant umbilical is capable of providing up to  
28 320 horsepower to do work at lateral distances of at least  
29 20 miles. This drilling application requires near neutrally  
30 buoyant umbilicals capable of providing high power at great  
31 distances and high speed data communications to and from the  
32 surface. The near neutrally buoyant umbilical reduces the  
33 frictional drag of the umbilical within the wellbore. To  
34 convey drilling equipment to great distances also requires

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 methods and apparatus to move heavy equipment through pipes  
2 at relatively high speeds. Similar high power umbilicals  
3 having high speed data communications to and from the surface  
4 are also useful for providing power and communications to  
5 remotely operated vehicles used for subsea service work in  
6 the oil and gas industry.

7  
8 Such high power electrically heated composite umbilicals  
9 are also useful as immersion heaters to be installed, or  
10 retrofitted, into subsea flowlines to prevent the formation  
11 of waxes and hydrates and to prevent the blockage of the  
12 flowlines. Such retrofitted electrically heated composite  
13 umbilicals provide an alternative for previously installed,  
14 but failed, permanent heating systems. A hydraulic pump  
15 installed on the distant end of an electrically heated  
16 composite umbilical also provides artificial lift to the  
17 produced hydrocarbons. Other electrically heated umbilicals  
18 used as immersion heaters are also described. Such immersion  
19 heater systems may be removed from the well, repaired, and  
20 retrofitted into flowlines without removing the flowlines.  
21 Near neutrally buoyant electrically heated umbilicals are  
22 described which may be installed great distances into  
23 flowlines. Different methods of deploying the electrically  
24 heated umbilicals are also discussed.

25  
26 Such high power, electrically heated composite  
27 umbilicals that are substantially neutrally buoyant, or  
28 positively buoyant, in sea water are also useful as flowlines  
29 for producing hydrocarbons from subsea wells.

## 30 31 32 **2. Description of the Related Art**

33  
34 The oil and gas industry does not now have the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 capability to drill horizontally extreme distances of  
2 approximately 20 miles to commercially meet some of the  
3 challenges that exist today. Industry extended  
4 reach-drilling capability is currently between 6 and 7 miles.  
5 Conventional drilling rigs using drill pipe and mud motors at  
6 shallow angles have established these conventional records.  
7 These wells have pushed conventional drilling technologies  
8 close to their practical limit and new methods are required  
9 for longer offsets.

10  
11 The industry's lack of a 20 mile drilling capability  
12 reduces accessibility to oil and gas reserves. Many areas,  
13 both onshore and offshore, have no surface access for  
14 development drilling. Onshore, this may be due to urban  
15 development as is the case in Holland, national parks or  
16 other special areas such as the Arctic National Wildlife  
17 Refuge (ANWR), or other land uses that are sensitive to  
18 surface drilling operations. Offshore, the incentive is to  
19 maximize the use of existing structures and infrastructure by  
20 replacing expensive flowlines, manifold and trees. Near  
21 shore regions as found in the Santa Barbara Channel, and  
22 especially where ice may be present such as in the Arctic or  
23 near Sakhalin Island, or where migrating whales may limit  
24 seasonal operations provide significant incentives for this  
25 new 20 mile drilling capability.

26  
27 The industry does not have an extreme reach lateral  
28 drilling system that is compatible with existing drilling and  
29 production infrastructure. If such a system were available,  
30 new roads, drill sites, pits, site remediation, permitting,  
31 etc. are all avoided in such onshore operations. Offshore,  
32 existing host structures will have greatly extended  
33 usefulness while reservoirs within 20-mile radii may be  
34 developed.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1           The industry does not have an extreme reach drilling  
2           capability that reduces the risk to the environment. If such  
3           a system were available, then operating from drilling and  
4           production centers would allow using subsurface access to the  
5           reservoirs. There would be no surface flowlines or  
6           facilities outside the regional drilling and production  
7           center. Extreme reach lateral drilling systems could  
8           eliminate the need for many of the flowlines on the ocean  
9           bottom in a regional development. However, centralized  
10          surface operations with fixed facilities require a paradigm  
11          shift in development drilling operations. The well drilling  
12          and maintenance equipment would not normally be mobile  
13          (except offshore on vessels) and it would normally spend its  
14          entire working life from one location.

15  
16          Several references are cited below related to the topics  
17          of expandable casing, methods to expand tubulars and casings,  
18          fabricating composite umbilicals, and well management  
19          systems.

20  
21          Relevant references to expandable casing includes  
22          U.S. Patent No. 5,667,011, entitled "Method of Creating a  
23          Casing in a Borehole", which issued on September 16, 1997,  
24          that is assigned to Shell Oil Company of Houston, Texas,  
25          and the following U.S. Patents, entire copies of which are  
26          incorporated herein by reference:

27  
28          U.S. 5,366,012; U.S. 5,348,095; U.S. 5,240,074;  
29          U.S. 4,716,965; U.S. 4,501,327; U.S. 4,495,997;  
30          U.S. 3,958,637; U.S. 3,203,451; U.S. 3,172,618;  
31          U.S. 3,052,298; U.S. 2,447,629; U.S. 2,207,478

32  
33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1            Relevant references to expandable casing also includes  
2 U.S. Patent No. 6,431,282, entitled "Method for Annular  
3 Sealing", which issued on August 13, 2002, that is assigned  
4 to Shell Oil Company of Houston, Texas, and the following  
5 U.S. Patents, entire copies of which are incorporated  
6 herein by reference:

7  
8 U.S. 6,012,522; U.S. 5,964,288; U.S. 5,875,845;  
9 U.S. 5,833,001; U.S. 5,794,702; U.S. 5,787,984;  
10 U.S. 5,718,288; U.S. 5,667,011; U.S. 5,337,823;  
11 U.S. 3,782,466; U.S. 3,489,220; U.S. 3,363,301;  
12 U.S. 3,297,092; U.S. 3,191,680; U.S. 3,134,442;  
13 U.S. 3,126,959; U.S. 2,294,294; U.S. 2,248,028  
14  
15

16            Other relevant foreign patent documents related  
17 expandable casing include the following, entire copies of  
18 which are incorporated herein by reference:

19  
20 E.P. 0,643,794; W.O. 09,933,763; W.O. 09,923,046;  
21 W.O. 09,906,670; W.O. 09,902,818; W.O. 09,703,489;  
22 W.O. 09,519,942; W.O. 09,419,574; W.O. 09,409,252;  
23 W.O. 09,409,250; W.O. 09,409,249  
24

25            Other publications related to expandable casing include  
26 the following documents related to Enventure Global  
27 Technology of Houston, Texas, entire copies of which are  
28 incorporated herein by reference:

29  
30 (a) Campo, D., et al., "Drilling and Recompletion  
31 Applications Using Solid Expandable Tubular Technology",  
32 SPE/IADC 72304 at 2002 SPE/IADC Middle East Drilling  
33 Technology Conference and Exhibition, 11 March 2002.  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 (b) Moore, M., et al., "Field Trial Proves Upgrades to Solid  
2 Expandable Tubulars", OTC 14217 at 2002 Offshore Technology  
3 Conference, 6-9 May 2002.

4  
5 (c) Grant, T., et al., "Deepwater Expandable Openhole Liner  
6 Case Histories: Learnings Through Field Applications", OTC  
7 14218 at 2002 Offshore Technology Conference, 6-9 May 2002.

8  
9 (d) Dupal, K., et al., "Realization of the Mono-Diameter  
10 Well: Evolution of a Game-Changing Technology", OTC 14312 at  
11 2002 Offshore Technology Conference, 6-9 May 2002.

12  
13 (e) Moore, M., et al., "Expandable Linear Hangers: Case  
14 Histories", OTC 14313 at 2002 Offshore Technology Conference,  
15 6-9 May 2002.

16  
17 (f) Nor, N., et al., "Transforming Conventional Wells to  
18 Bigbore Completions Using Solid Expandable Tubular  
19 Technology", OTC 14315 at 2002 Offshore Technology  
20 Conference, 6-9 May 2002.

21  
22 (g) Merritt, R., et al., "Well Remediation Using Expandable  
23 Cased-Hole Liners - Summary of Case Histories", Texas Tech  
24 University's Southwestern Petroleum Short Course - 2002  
25 Conference.

26  
27 (h) Cales, G., et al., "Subsidence Remediation - Extending  
28 Well Life Through the Use of Solid Expandable Casing  
29 Systems", AADE 01-NC-HO-24 at March 2001 Conference.

30  
31 (i) Dupal, K., et al., "Solid Expandable Tubular  
32 Technology - A Year of Case Histories in the Drilling  
33 Environment", SPE/IADC 67770 at 2001 SPE/IADC Drilling  
34 Conference 27 February - 1 March 2001.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 (j) Dupal, K., et al., "Well Design With Expandable Tubulars  
2 Reduces Costs and Increases Success in Deepwater  
3 Applications", Deep Offshore Technology, 2002.

4  
5 (k) Daigle, C., et al., "Expandable Tubulars: Field Examples  
6 of Application in Well Construction and Remediation", SPE  
7 62958 at SPE Annual Technical Conference and Exhibition, 1-4  
8 October 2000.

9  
10 (l) Bullock, M., et al., "Using Expandable Solid Tubulars to  
11 Solve Well Construction Challenges in Deep Waters and  
12 Maturing Properties", IBP 275 00 at the Rio Oil & Gas  
13 Conference, 16-19 October 2000.

14  
15 (m) Mack, A., et al., "In-Situ Expansion of Casing and  
16 Tubing - Effect on Mechanical Properties and Resistance to  
17 Sulfide Stress Cracking", NACE 00164 at the NACE Expo  
18 Corrosion 2000 Conference, 26-30 March 2000.

19  
20 (n) Lohoefer, C., et al., "Expandable Liner Hanger Provides  
21 Cost-Effective Alternative Solution", IADC/SPE 59151 at 2000  
22 IADC/SPE Drilling Conference, 23-25 February 2000.

23  
24 (o) Filippov, A., et al., "Expandable Tubular Solutions",  
25 SPE 56500 at 1999 SPE Annual Technical Conference and  
26 Exhibition, 3-6 October 1999.

27  
28 (p) Haut, R., et al., "Meeting Economic Challenge of  
29 Deepwater Drilling with Expandable-Tubular Technology", Deep  
30 Offshore Technology Conference, 1999.

31  
32 (q) Bayfield, M., et al., "Burst and Collapse of a Sealed  
33 Multilateral Junction: Numerical Simulations", SPE/IADC 52873  
34 at 1999 SPE/IADC Drilling Conference, 9-11 March 1999.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Relevant references related to expandable casing also  
2 include U.S. Patent No. 6,354,373, entitled "Expandable  
3 Tubing for a Well Bore Hole and Method of Expanding", which  
4 issued on March 12, 2002, that is assigned to the  
5 Schlumberger Technology Corporation of Houston, Texas, and  
6 the following U.S. Patents, entire copies of which are  
7 incorporated herein by reference:

8  
9 U.S. 6,012,522; U.S. 5,631,557; U.S. 5,494,106;  
10 U.S. 5,366,012; U.S. 5,348,095; U.S. 5,337,823;  
11 U.S. 5,200,072; U.S. 5,083,608; U.S. 5,014,779;  
12 U.S. 4,976,322; U.S. 5,830,109; U.S. 4,716,965;  
13 U.S. 4,501,327; U.S. 4,495,997; U.S. 4,308,736;  
14 U.S. 3,948,321; U.S. 3,785,193; U.S. 3,691,624;  
15 U.S. 3,489,220; U.S. 3,477,506; U.S. 3,364,993;  
16 U.S. 3,353,599; U.S. 3,326,293; U.S. 3,054,455;  
17 U.S. 3,028,915; U.S. 2,734,580; U.S. 2,447,629;  
18 U.S. 2,214,226; U.S. 1,652,650; U.S. 341,327

19  
20  
21 Other relevant foreign patent documents related to  
22 expandable casing include the following, entire copies of  
23 which are incorporated herein by reference:

24  
25 S.U. 1,747,673; S.U. 1,051,222; W.O. 93/25799  
26  
27

28 Relevant references for methods to expand tubulars and  
29 casings include U.S. Patent No. 6,325,148, entitled "Tools  
30 and Methods for Use with Expandable Tubulars", which issued  
31 on December 4, 2001, that is assigned to Weatherford/Lamb,  
32 Inc. of Houston, Texas, and the following U.S. Patents,  
33 entire copies of which are incorporated herein by reference:  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 U.S. 6,070,671; U.S. 6,029,748; U.S. 5,979,571;  
2 U.S. 5,960,895; U.S. 5,924,745; U.S. 5,901,789;  
3 U.S. 5,887,668; U.S. 5,785,120; U.S. 5,706,905;  
4 U.S. 5,667,011; U.S. 5,636,661; U.S. 5,560,426;  
5 U.S. 5,553,679; U.S. 5,520,255; U.S. 5,472,057;  
6 U.S. 5,409,059; U.S. 5,366,012; U.S. 5,348,095;  
7 U.S. 5,322,127; U.S. 5,307,879; U.S. 5,301,760;  
8 U.S. 5,271,472; U.S. 5,267,613; U.S. 5,156,209;  
9 U.S. 5,052,849; U.S. 5,052,483; U.S. 5,014,779;  
10 U.S. 4,997,320; U.S. 4,976,322; U.S. 4,883,121;  
11 U.S. 4,866,966; U.S. 4,848,469; U.S. 4,807,704;  
12 U.S. 4,626,129; U.S. 4,581,617; U.S. 4,567,631;  
13 U.S. 4,505,612; U.S. 4,505,142; U.S. 4,502,308;  
14 U.S. 4,487,630; U.S. 4,483,399; U.S. 4,470,280;  
15 U.S. 4,450,612; U.S. 4,445,201; U.S. 4,414,739;  
16 U.S. 4,407,150; U.S. 4,387,502; U.S. 4,382,379;  
17 U.S. 4,362,324; U.S. 4,359,889; U.S. 4,349,050;  
18 U.S. 4,319,393; U.S. 3,977,076; U.S. 3,948,321;  
19 U.S. 3,820,370; U.S. 3,785,193; U.S. 3,780,562;  
20 U.S. 3,776,307; U.S. 3,746,091; U.S. 3,712,376;  
21 U.S. 3,691,624; U.S. 3,689,113; U.S. 3,669,190;  
22 U.S. 3,583,200; U.S. 3,489,220; U.S. 3,477,506;  
23 U.S. 3,354,955; U.S. 3,353,599; U.S. 3,326,293;  
24 U.S. 3,297,092; U.S. 3,245,471; U.S. 3,203,483;  
25 U.S. 3,203,451; U.S. 3,195,646; U.S. 3,191,680;  
26 U.S. 3,191,677; U.S. 3,186,485; U.S. 3,179,168;  
27 U.S. 3,167,122; U.S. 3,039,530; U.S. 3,028,915;  
28 U.S. 2,633,374; U.S. 2,627,891; U.S. 2,519,116;  
29 U.S. 2,499,630; U.S. 2,424,878; U.S. 2,383,214;  
30 U.S. 2,214,226; U.S. 2,017,451; U.S. 1,981,525;  
31 U.S. 1,880,218; U.S. 1,301,285; U.S. 988,504  
32  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           Other relevant foreign patent documents related to  
2 methods to expand tubulars and casings include the following,  
3 entire copies of which are incorporated herein by reference:  
4

5       W.O. 99/23354; W.O. 99/18328; W.O. 99/02818; W.O. 98/00626;  
6       W.O. 97/21901; W.O. 94/25655; W.O. 93/24728; W.O. 92/01139  
7       G.B. 2329918A; G.B. 2320734A; G.B. 2313860B; G.B. 2216926A;  
8       G.B. 1582392; G.B. 1457843; G.B. 1448304; G.B. 1277461;  
9       G.B. 997721; G.B. 792886; G.B. 730338;  
10      E.P. 0 961 007 A2; E.P. 0 952 305 A1; E.P. WO93/25800;  
11      D.E. 4133802C1; D.E. 3213464A1  
12  
13

14           Another relevant publication related to methods to  
15 expand tubulars and casings includes the following, an entire  
16 copy of which is incorporated herein by reference:  
17

18       Metcalf, P. "Expandable Slotted Tubes Offer Well Design  
19 Benefits", Petroleum Engineer International, vol. 69, No. 10  
20 (Oct 1996), pp 60-63.  
21  
22

23           Relevant references for fabricating composite umbilicals  
24 includes U.S. Patent No. 6,357,485, entitled "Composite  
25 Spoolable Tube", which issued on March 19, 2002, that is  
26 assigned to the Fiberspar Corporation, and the following  
27 U.S. Patents, entire copies of which are incorporated herein  
28 by reference:  
29

30       U.S. 6,286,558; U.S. 6,148,866; U.S. 5,921,285;  
31       U.S. 6,016,845; U.S. 6,46,887; U.S. 1,930,285;  
32       U.S. 2,648,720; U.S. 2,690,769; U.S. 2,725,713;  
33       U.S. 2,810,424; U.S. 3,116,760; U.S. 3,277,231;  
34       U.S. 3,334,663; U.S. 3,379,220; U.S. 3,477,474;

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 U.S. 3,507,412; U.S. 3,522,413; U.S. 3,554,284;  
2 U.S. 3,579,402; U.S. 3,604,461; U.S. 3,606,402;  
3 U.S. 3,692,601; U.S. 3,700,519; U.S. 3,701,489;  
4 U.S. 3,734,421; U.S. 3,738,637; U.S. 3,740,285;  
5 U.S. 3,769,127; U.S. 3,783,060; U.S. 3,828,112;  
6 U.S. 3,856,052; U.S. 3,856,052; U.S. 3,860,742;  
7 U.S. 3,933,180; U.S. 3,956,051; U.S. 3,957,410;  
8 U.S. 3,960,629; U.S. RE29,122; U.S. 4,053,343;  
9 U.S. 4,057,610; U.S. 4,095,865; U.S. 4,108,701;  
10 U.S. 4,125,423; U.S. 4,133,972; U.S. 4,137,949;  
11 U.S. 4,139,025; U.S. 4,190,088; U.S. 4,200,126;  
12 U.S. 4,220,381; U.S. 4,241,763; U.S. 4,248,062;  
13 U.S. 4,261,390; U.S. 4,303,457; U.S. 4,308,999;  
14 U.S. 4,336,415; U.S. 4,463,779; U.S. 4,515,737;  
15 U.S. 4,522,235; U.S. 4,530,379; U.S. 4,556,340;  
16 U.S. 4,578,675; U.S. 4,627,472; U.S. 4,657,795;  
17 U.S. 4,681,169; U.S. 4,728,224; U.S. 4,789,007;  
18 U.S. 4,992,787; U.S. 5,097,870; U.S. 5,170,011;  
19 U.S. 5,172,765; U.S. 5,176,180; U.S. 5,184,682;  
20 U.S. 5,209,136; U.S. 5,285,008; U.S. 5,285,204;  
21 U.S. 5,330,807; U.S. 5,334,801; U.S. 5,348,096;  
22 U.S. 5,351,752; U.S. 5,428,706; U.S. 5,435,867;  
23 U.S. 5,443,099; U.S. RE35,081; U.S. 5,469,916;  
24 U.S. 5,551,484; U.S. 5,730,188; U.S. 5,755,266;  
25 U.S. 5,828,003; U.S. 5,921,285; U.S. 5,933,945;  
26 U.S. 5,951,812; U.S. 6,016,845; U.S. 6,148,866;  
27 U.S. 6,286,558; U.S. 6,004,639; U.S. 6,361,299

28

29

30 Other relevant foreign patent documents related to  
31 fabricating composite umbilicals include the following,  
32 entire copies of which are incorporated herein  
33 by reference:

34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 DE 4214383; EP 0024512; EP 352148; EP 505815; GB 553,110;  
2 GB 2255994; GB 2270099  
3  
4

5 Other relevant publications related to fabricating  
6 composite umbilicals include the following, entire copies of  
7 which are incorporated herein by reference:  
8

9 (a) Fowler Hampton et al.; "Advanced Composite Tubing  
10 Usable", The American Oil & Gas Reporter, pp. 76-81  
11 (Sep. 1997).  
12

13 (b) Fowler Hampton et al.; "Development Update and  
14 Applications of an Advanced Composite Spoolable Tubing",  
15 Offshore Technology Conference held in Houston Texas from  
16 4th to 7th of May 1998, pp. 157-162.  
17

18 (c) Hahan H. Thomas and Williams G. Jerry; "Compression  
19 Failure Mechanisms in Unidirectional Composites", NASA  
20 Technical Memorandum pp 1-42 (Aug. 1984).  
21

22 (d) Hansen et al.; "Qualification and Verification of  
23 Spoolable High Pressure Composite Service Lines for the  
24 Asgard Field Development Project", paper presented at the  
25 1997 Offshore Technology Conference held in Houston Texas  
26 from 5th to 8th of May 1997, pp. 45-54.  
27

28 (e) Haug et al.,; "Dynamic Umbilical with Composite Tube  
29 (DUCT)", Paper presented at the 1998 Offshore Technology  
30 Conference held in Houston Texas from 4th to 7th of May,  
31 1998, pp.699-712.  
32

33 (f) Lundberg et al.; "Spin-off Technologies from Development  
34 of Continuous Composite Tubing Manufacturing Process", Paper

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

presented at the 1998 Offshore Technology Conference held in Houston, Texas from 4th to 7th of May 1998, pp. 149-155.

(g) Marker et al.; "Anaconda: Joint Development Project Leads to Digitally Controlled Composite Coiled Tubing Drilling System", Paper presented at the SPEI/COTA, Coiled Tubing Roundtable held in Houston, Texas from 5th to 6th of Apr., 2000, pp. 1-9.

(h) Measures R.M.; "Smart Structures with Nerves of Glass", Prog. Aerospace Sc. 26(4):289-351 (1989).

(i) Measures et al.; "Fiber Optic Sensors for Smart Structures", Optics and Lasers Engineering 16: 127-152 (1992)

(j) Poper Peter; "Braiding", International Encyclopedia of Composites, Published by VGH, Publishers, Inc., 220 English 23rd Street, Suite 909, New York, NY 10010.

(k) Quigley et al., "Development and Application of a Novel Coiled Tubing String for Concentric Workover Services", Paper presented at the 1997 Offshore Technology Conference held in Houston, Texas from 5th to 8th of May 1997, pp. 189-202.

(l) Sas-Jaworsky II and Bell Steve "Innovative Applications Stimulated Coiled Tubing Development", World Oil, 217(6): 61 (Jun. 1996).

(m) Sas-Jaworsky II and Mark Elliot Teel; "Coiled Tubing 1995 Update: Production Applications", World Oil, 216 (6): 97 (Ju. 1995).

(n) Sas-Jaworsky, A. and J.G. Williams, "Advanced composites enhance coiled tubing capabilities",

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 World Oil, pp. 57-69 (Apr. 1994).

2  
3 (o) Sas-Jaworsky, A. and J.G. Williams, "Development of a  
4 composite coiled tubing for oilfield services", Society of  
5 Petroleum Engineers, SPE 26536, pp. 1-11 (1993).

6  
7 (p) Sas-Jaworsky, A. and J.G. Williams, "Enabling  
8 capabilities and potential application of composite coiled  
9 tubing", Proceedings of World Oil's 2nd International  
10 Conference on Coiled Tubing Technology, pp. 2-9 (1994).

11  
12 (p) Sas-Jaworsky II Alex; "Developments Position CT for  
13 Future Prominence", The American Oil & Gas Reporter, pp. 87-  
14 92 (Mar. 1996).

15  
16 (r) Moe Wood T., et al.; "Spoolable, Composite Tubing for  
17 Chemical and Water Injection and Hydraulic Valve Operation",  
18 Proceedings of the 11th International Conference on Offshore  
19 Mechanics and Arctic Engineering-1992, vol. III, Part A-  
20 Materials Engineering, pp. 199-207 (1992).

21  
22 (s) Shuart J.M. et al.; "Compression Behavior of 45°-  
23 Dominated Laminates with a Circular Hole of Impact Damage",  
24 AIAA Journal 24(1): 115-122 (Jan. 1986).

25  
26 (t) Silverman A. Seth, "Spoolable Composite Pipe for  
27 Offshore Applications", Materials Selection & Design pp. 48-  
28 50 (Jan. 1997).

29  
30 (u) Rispler K. et al.; "Composite Coiled Tubing in Harsh  
31 Completion/Workover Environments", paper presented at the SPE  
32 Gas Technology Symposium and Exhibition held in Calgary,  
33 Alberta, Canada, on Mar. 15-18, 1998, pp. 405-410.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 (v) Williams G.J. et al.; "Composite Spoolable Pipe  
2 Development, Advancements, and Limitations", Paper presented  
3 at the 2000 Offshore Technology Conference held in Houston  
4 Texas from 1st to 4th of May 2000, pp. 1-16.  
5  
6

7 A relevant reference for well management systems  
8 includes U.S. Patent No. 6,257,332, entitled "Well Management  
9 System", which issued on July 10, 2001, that is assigned to  
10 the Halliburton Energy Services, Inc., an entire copy of  
11 which incorporated herein by reference.  
12  
13

14 Typical procedures used in the oil and gas industries to  
15 drill and complete wells are well documented. For example,  
16 such procedures are documented in the entire "Rotary Drilling  
17 Series" published by the Petroleum Extension Service of The  
18 University of Texas at Austin, Austin, Texas that is  
19 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety  
20 that is comprised of the following:

21 Unit I - "The Rig and Its Maintenance" (12 Lessons);  
22 Unit II - "Normal Drilling Operations" (5 Lessons);  
23 Unit III - Nonroutine Rig Operations (4 Lessons);  
24 Unit IV - Man Management and Rig Management (1 Lesson);  
25 and Unit V - Offshore Technology (9 Lessons). All of the  
26 individual Glossaries of all of the above Lessons in their  
27 entirety are also explicitly incorporated herein, and all  
28 definitions in those Glossaries shall be considered to  
29 be explicitly referenced and/or defined herein.  
30

31 Additional procedures used in the oil and gas industries  
32 to drill and complete wells are well documented in the series  
33 entitled "Lessons in Well Servicing and Workover" published  
34 by the Petroleum Extension Service of The University of Texas

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 at Austin, Austin, Texas that is incorporated herein by  
2 reference in its entirety that is comprised of all 12  
3 Lessons. All of the individual Glossaries of all of the  
4 above Lessons in their entirety are also explicitly  
5 incorporated herein, and any and all definitions in those  
6 Glossaries shall be considered to be explicitly referenced  
7 and/or defined herein.

8  
9 Entire copies of each and every reference explicitly  
10 cited above in this section entitled "Description of the  
11 Related Art" are incorporated herein by reference.

12  
13 At the time of the filing of the application herein,  
14 the applicant is unaware of any additional art that is  
15 particularly relevant to the invention other than that cited  
16 in the above defined "related" U.S. Patents, the "related"  
17 co-pending U.S. Patent Applications, the "related" co-pending  
18 PCT Application, and the "related" U.S. Disclosure Documents  
19 that are specified in the first paragraphs of this  
20 application.

## 21 22 23 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

24  
25 An object of the invention is to provide high power  
26 umbilicals for subterranean electric drilling.

27  
28 Another object of the invention is to provide high power  
29 umbilicals that allow subterranean electric drilling machines  
30 to drill boreholes of up to 20 miles laterally from surface  
31 drill sites.

32  
33 Another object of the invention is to provide high power  
34 umbilicals that allow the subterranean liner expansion tools

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 to install casings within monobore wells to distances of up  
2 to 20 miles laterally from surface drill sites.

3  
4 Another object of the invention is to provide high power  
5 near neutrally buoyant umbilicals for subterranean electric  
6 drilling to reduce the frictional drag on the umbilicals.

7  
8 Yet another object of the invention is to provide a  
9 high power near neutrally buoyant umbilical that possesses  
10 high speed data communications and also provides a conduit  
11 for drilling mud.

12  
13 Another object of the invention is to provide an  
14 umbilical that delivers in excess of 60 kilowatts to a  
15 downhole electric motor that is a portion of a subterranean  
16 electric drilling machine.

17  
18 Yet another object of the invention is to provide a  
19 novel feedback control of a downhole electric motor that is a  
20 part of a subterranean electric drilling machine.

21  
22 Yet another object of the invention is to provide high  
23 power umbilicals to operate subsea remotely operated  
24 vehicles.

25  
26 Another object of the invention is to provide an  
27 umbilical to operate a subsea remotely operated vehicle that  
28 possesses high speed data communications and provides a  
29 conduit for fluids.

30  
31 Yet another object of the invention is to provide a  
32 novel feedback control of a downhole electric motor that  
33 comprises a portion of a remotely operated vehicle.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Another object of the invention is to provide electric  
2 flowline immersion heater assemblies that may be retrofitted  
3 into existing subsea flowlines.  
4

5 Yet another object of the invention is to provide  
6 electrically heated composite umbilicals that may be  
7 retrofitted into existing subsea flowlines.  
8

9 Another object of the invention is to provide different  
10 types of electrically heated composite umbilicals that may be  
11 installed within subsea flowlines.  
12

13 Yet another object of the invention is to provide  
14 different types of electrically heated umbilicals.  
15

16 Another object of the invention is to provide different  
17 methods to convey electrically heated composite umbilicals  
18 into subsea flowlines.  
19

20 Yet another object of the invention is to provide  
21 different methods to convey electrically heated umbilicals  
22 into subsea flowlines.  
23

24 Another object of the invention is to provide  
25 electrically heated immersion heater systems to prevent the  
26 build up of wax and hydrates to prevent the blockage of  
27 subsea flowlines.  
28

29 Yet another object of the invention is to provide a  
30 hydraulic pump attached to the distant end of an electrically  
31 heated composite umbilical installed within a flowline to  
32 provide artificial lift to the produced hydrocarbons.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Another object of the invention is to provide a  
2 hydraulic pump attached to the distant end of an electrically  
3 heated umbilical installed within a flowline to provide  
4 artificial lift to the produced hydrocarbons.  
5

6 Yet another object of the invention is to install an  
7 electrically heated composite umbilical within a flowline  
8 carrying heavy oils to reduce the viscosity of those heavy  
9 oils.  
10

11 Another object of the invention is to provide  
12 electrically heated composite umbilicals that are heated  
13 uniformly within a flowline.  
14

15 Yet another object of the invention is to provide  
16 electrically heated composite umbilicals that are heated  
17 nonuniformly within a flowline.  
18

19 Yet another object of the invention is to provide  
20 electrically heated composite umbilicals that are  
21 substantially neutrally buoyant within the fluids present  
22 within the flowlines.  
23

24 Another object of the invention is to provide  
25 electrically heated umbilicals that are substantially  
26 neutrally buoyant within the fluids present within the  
27 flowlines.  
28

29 It is yet another object of the invention to provide an  
30 electrically heated immersion heater system that may be  
31 removed from the well, repaired, and retrofitted in the  
32 flowline without removing the flowline.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



It is another object of the invention to provide an electrically heated, substantially neutrally buoyant tabular umbilical to be used as a flowline from a subsea well.

Yet further, it is another object of the invention to provide an electrically heated, positively neutrally buoyant tubular umbilical to be used as a flowline from a subsea well.

It is yet another object of the invention to provide a substantially neutrally buoyant tabular umbilical to be used as a flowline from a subsea well.

And finally, it is another object of the invention to provide a positively neutrally buoyant tubular umbilical to be used as a flowline from a subsea well.

### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Figure 1 shows a section view of a umbilical that is substantially neutrally buoyant in drilling mud within the well which provides a conduit for drilling fluids that is capable of providing 320 horsepower of electrical power at a distance of up to 20 miles.

Figure 2 shows the uphole and downhole power management system for the composite umbilical shown in Figure 1.

Figure 3 shows an electrical block diagram representing two conductors from one three phase delta circuit providing up to 160 horsepower of electrical power at a distance of up to 20 miles.

"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Riq-3

1           Figure 4 shows an umbilical carousel in the process of  
2 being constructed.

3  
4           Figure 5 shows a computerized uphole management system  
5 for the umbilical that provides for the closed-loop automatic  
6 control of all uphole and downhole functions.

7  
8           Figure 6 generally shows the subterranean electric  
9 drilling machine that is disposed within a previously  
10 installed borehole casing during the process of drilling a  
11 new borehole and simultaneously installing a section of  
12 expandable casing.

13  
14           Figure 7 shows the casing hanger.

15  
16           Figure 8 shows detail for a downhole pump motor assembly  
17 that is related to the downhole pump motor assembly in  
18 Figure 6.

19  
20           Figure 9 shows a subterranean electric drilling machine  
21 boring a new borehole from an offshore platform.

22  
23           Figure 10 shows a section view of the subterranean liner  
24 expansion tool positioned within an unexpanded casing that is  
25 injecting new cement into the new borehole.

26  
27           Figure 11 shows the subterranean liner expansion tool in  
28 the process of expanding the expandable casing within the new  
29 borehole before the new cement sets up.

30  
31           Figure 12 shows the casing hanger after a portion of it  
32 has been expanded with the casing hanger setting tool inside  
33 the previously installed casing.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           Figure 13 shows a section view of the monobore well, or  
2 near-monobore well, after passage of the subterranean liner  
3 expansion tool.  
4

5           Figure 14 shows relevant parameters related to fluid  
6 flow rates through the umbilical.  
7

8           Figure 15 shows various parameters related to tripping  
9 the subterranean electric drilling machine and the expandable  
10 casing into the well.  
11

12           Figure 16 shows a subterranean electric drilling machine  
13 boring a new borehole under the ocean bottom from an  
14 onshore wellsite.  
15

16           Figure 17 shows a subterranean electric drilling machine  
17 boring a new borehole under the earth from a land based  
18 drill site.  
19

20           Figure 18 shows an open hole subterranean electric  
21 drilling machine that is drilling an open borehole in the  
22 earth.  
23

24           Figure 19 shows screw drive subterranean electric  
25 drilling machine that is drilling an open borehole in  
26 the earth.  
27

28           Figure 20 shows a cross section of another embodiment of  
29 an umbilical used for subterranean electric drilling  
30 machines, for open hole subterranean electric drilling  
31 machines, and for other applications.  
32

33           Figure 21 shows yet another neutrally buoyant composite  
34 umbilical in 12 lb per gallon mud.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           Figure 22 shows an umbilical providing power in excess  
2 of 60 kilowatts and communications to a remotely operated  
3 vehicle  
4

5           Figure 23 shows a umbilical providing power in excess of  
6 60 kilowatts, communications, and fluids to a remotely  
7 operated vehicle.  
8

9           Figure 24 shows a sectional view of one preferred  
10 embodiment of a Smart Shuttle®.  
11

12           Figure 25 shows a sectional view of a tractor deployer  
13 operated from an umbilical.  
14

15           Figure 26 shows various devices that may be attached to  
16 the Retrieval Sub of the Smart Shuttle and the tractor  
17 conveyer.  
18

19           Figure 27 shows a diagrammatic representation of  
20 functions that may be performed with the Smart Shuttle and  
21 the tractor conveyance system.  
22

23           Figure 28 shows a subsea well providing produced  
24 hydrocarbons to a fixed platform through several subsea  
25 flowlines.  
26

27           Figure 29 shows four subsea wells providing produced  
28 hydrocarbons to a Floating Production, Storage, and  
29 Offloading structure (FPSO) through four different subsea  
30 flowlines.  
31

32           Figure 30 shows an Electrically Heated Composite  
33 Umbilical ("EHCU") installed within a subsea flowline that is  
34 providing produced hydrocarbons to a floating platform that

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 was conveyed into place using a particular method of  
2 conveyance.

3  
4 Figure 31 shows an embodiment of an Electric Flowline  
5 Immersion Heater Assembly ("EFIHA") having an Electrically  
6 Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCUC") in a subsea flowline that  
7 was conveyed into place using a Smart Shuttle that obtains  
8 its power from a wireline located within the EHCUC.

9  
10 Figure 32 shows another embodiment of an Electric  
11 Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly ("EHCUC") having an  
12 Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical in a subsea flowline  
13 that was conveyed into place using a Smart Shuttle that  
14 obtains its electrical power from additional electrical  
15 conductors within the EHCUC.

16  
17 Figure 33 shows yet another embodiment of an Electric  
18 Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly ("EFIHA") having an  
19 Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical in a subsea flowline  
20 that was conveyed into place using particular methods of  
21 operation so that no fluid will be forced into the reservoir  
22 during transit of the EFIHA into the flowline.

23  
24 Figure 34 shows still another embodiment of an Electric  
25 Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly having an Electrically  
26 Heated Composite Umbilical in a subsea flowline that was  
27 conveyed into place using yet another method of conveyance.

28  
29 Figure 35 shows an Electrically Heated Composite  
30 Umbilical being installed within a flowline by a tractor  
31 means, where the host of the flowline is a floating platform.

32  
33 Figure 36 shows a Pump-Down Conveyed Flowline Immersion  
34 Heater Assembly ("PDCFIHA") possessing an Electrically Heated

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Composite Umbilical ("EHCU") installed within a flowline,  
2 where the host of the flowline is a Floating Production,  
3 Storage and Offloading ("FPSO") ship.  
4

5 Figure 37 shows a Pump-Down Conveyed Flowline Immersion  
6 Heater Assembly ("PDCFIHA") installed within a flowline,  
7 where the host of the flowline is a floating platform.  
8

9 Figure 37A shows a Pump-Down Conveyed Flowline Immersion  
10 Heater Assembly ("PDCFIHA") installed within a flowline to be  
11 used for artificial lift during hydrocarbon production, where  
12 the host of the flowline is a floating platform.  
13

14 Figure 38 shows an Electric Flowline Immersion Heater  
15 Assembly ("EFIHA") which possesses an Electrical Heated  
16 Composite Umbilical that is used to produce heavy oil from  
17 an open borehole that also uses a hydraulic pump for  
18 artificial lift.  
19

20 Figure 39 an exploratory well with large volume fluid  
21 sampling capability obtained from a downhole sampling unit.  
22

23 Figure 40 shows an apparatus that provides electrical  
24 power from a flowline penetrating connector to other subsea  
25 systems.  
26

27 Figure 41 shows one embodiment of a composite umbilical  
28 used to uniformly heat a flowline.  
29

30 Figure 42 shows a first resistor network used to  
31 electrically heat a composite umbilical.  
32

33 Figure 43 shows an embodiment of a composite umbilical  
34 used to nonuniformly heat a flowline.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           Figure 44 shows an embodiment of a second resistor  
2 network used to nonuniformly heat a composite umbilical.

3  
4           Figure 45 shows an embodiment of an electrically heated  
5 umbilical that is surrounded with steel or synthetic armor.

6  
7           Figure 46 shows an embodiment of an electrically heated  
8 umbilical that possesses an electric cable as a heating  
9 element within a steel coiled tubing.

10  
11           Figure 47 shows another embodiment of an electrically  
12 heated umbilical that possesses an electric cable as a  
13 heating element within steel coiled tubing that is surrounded  
14 by thermal insulation.

15  
16           Figure 48 shows yet another embodiment of an  
17 electrically heated umbilical that is a bundled umbilical  
18 possessing electric cables and tubes capable of carrying  
19 fluids.

20  
21           Figure 49 shows one subsea well providing produced  
22 hydrocarbons to a Floating Production, Storage, and  
23 Offloading structure (FPSO) through a positively buoyant  
24 and electrically heated composite umbilical.

25  
26           Figure 50 shows a cross section of one embodiment a  
27 positively buoyant electrically heated flowline.

## 28 29 30           DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

31  
32           Figure 1 shows a section view of a preferred embodiment  
33 of an umbilical 2. In this preferred embodiment, substantial  
34 portions of the umbilical are fabricated from one or more

*"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Rig-3*

1 composite materials. Consequently umbilical 2 is also called  
2 a composite umbilical. Composite umbilical 2 provides a  
3 connection between the surface and other downhole tools  
4 (such as a subterranean electric drilling machine to be  
5 described later) which is capable of performing useful work  
6 at great distances from a well site. In the preferred  
7 embodiment shown in Figure 1, the umbilical is capable of  
8 performing useful work at the distance of 20 miles away from  
9 a surface drilling site. This statement means that the  
10 umbilical is capable of performing useful work at any  
11 distance between 0 miles to 20 miles away from a wellsite.  
12 This connection is called an umbilical and it does not rotate  
13 like drill pipe and its capabilities are different from those  
14 of coiled tubing used in drilling operations.

15  
16 In particular, Figure 1 shows an umbilical that is  
17 substantially neutrally buoyant in any specific density of  
18 drilling mud 4 that is present in a wellbore. The drilling  
19 mud 4 may also be called the drilling fluid. The symbol for  
20 the density of drilling mud is  $\rho$ (drilling mud). In this  
21 particular example of a preferred embodiment, the density of  
22 drilling mud present in the wellbore is 12 lbs/gallon.

23  
24 In Figure 1, the composite umbilical is partially  
25 fabricated from inside pipe 6. In Figure 1, the umbilical  
26 has an inside diameter of ID1. In this particular  
27 embodiment, the inside diameter ID1 is equal to 4.5 inches.  
28 The inside diameter forms a hollow region through which  
29 fluids may be sent to, and from downhole. Put another way,  
30 the inside diameter forms a conduit through which fluids may  
31 be sent from the surface downhole, or from downhole to the  
32 surface. Therefore, the umbilical possesses a fluid conduit  
33 for conducting drilling fluids through the interior of the  
34 umbilical. The fluids present within the inside pipe are

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 shown by element 8 in Figure 1. The density of the  
2 fluids 8 is defined to be the symbol  $\rho$  (umbilical fluid).  
3 For example, drilling mud may be sent downhole through the  
4 4.5 inch ID pipe. The ID of this pipe is also called the  
5 interior of this pipe. The inside pipe 6 has wall thickness  
6 T1, but this legend is not shown in Figure 1 for brevity.  
7 In this preferred embodiment, the wall thickness of the  
8 inside pipe T1 is 0.25 inches. The wall of the inside  
9 pipe 6 is made from a composite material. This composite  
10 wall may have many layers of different composite materials  
11 made of different materials, each layer having a different  
12 specific gravity. As an example of one preferred embodiment,  
13 the composite material may be a carbon-based composite  
14 material. For reasons of simplicity, those layers are not  
15 shown in Figure 1. However, there will be an average  
16 specific gravity of the interior pipe that is defined to be  
17 SG(inside pipe). In this preferred embodiment, the specific  
18 gravity of the inside pipe is equal to 1.5.

19  
20 In Figure 1, the composite umbilical is partially  
21 fabricated from outside pipe 10. In Figure 1, the umbilical  
22 has an outside diameter of OD2 and this legend is shown in  
23 Figure 1. In this preferred embodiment, the outside diameter  
24 OD2 is equal to 6.00 inches O.D. Consequently, the external  
25 portion of the composite umbilical appears to be a pipe  
26 having the outside diameter of OD2. The outside pipe 10 has  
27 wall thickness T2, but this legend is not shown in  
28 Figure 1 for brevity. In this preferred embodiment, the wall  
29 thickness of the outside pipe T2 is 0.25 inches. The wall  
30 of the outside pipe 10 is made from a composite material.  
31 This composite wall may have many layers of different  
32 composite materials made of different materials, each layer  
33 having a different specific gravity. In one preferred  
34 embodiment, the composite material may be a carbon-based

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 composite material. Those layers are not shown in Figure 1  
2 for simplicity. For example, an outer layer of composite  
3 material may be chosen to be particularly abrasion resistant.  
4 As one example, the outer layer of composite material may be  
5 made of a carbon-based composite material. However, there  
6 will be an average specific gravity of the outside pipe that  
7 is defined to be SG(outside pipe). In this preferred  
8 embodiment, the specific gravity of the outside pipe is  
9 equal to 1.5.

10  
11 As shown in Figure 1, the interior pipe 6 is  
12 asymmetrical located within the exterior pipe 10 that forms  
13 an the asymmetric volume 12 between the two pipes. Within  
14 the asymmetric volume 12 between the two pipes are insulated  
15 current carrying electric wires designated by the legends A,  
16 B, C, D, E, and F in Figure 1. Also shown in Figure 1 is  
17 high speed data link 14. This high speed data link provides  
18 high speed data communications from the surface to downhole  
19 equipment, and from the downhole equipment to the surface.  
20 High speed data link 14 is selected from a list including a  
21 fiber optic cable, a coaxial cable, and twisted wire cables.  
22 In the particular preferred embodiment of the invention shown  
23 in Figure 1, the high speed data link is chosen to be a fiber  
24 optic cable. The asymmetric volume 12 between the two pipes  
25 that contains wires A, B, C, D, E, and F, and the fiber optic  
26 cable, is otherwise filled with syntactic foam material.  
27 This syntactic foam material is often made from silica  
28 microspheres that are embedded in a filler material, such as  
29 epoxy resin or other composite materials. The syntactic foam  
30 material has a specific gravity that is defined as  
31 SG(syntactic foam material). In this preferred embodiment of  
32 the invention, the specific gravity of the syntactic foam  
33 material is 0.825. In this preferred embodiment of the  
34 invention, syntactic foam material possessing silica

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 microspheres is provided by the Cumming Corporation. The  
2 Cumming Corporation is located at 225 Bodwell Street, Avon,  
3 MA 02322. The Cumming Corporation can also be reached by  
4 telephone at (508) 580-2660 or by the internet at  
5 www.emersoncumming.com. The details on the syntactic foam  
6 material may be reviewed in detail in Attachment 28 to  
7 Provisional Patent Application Number 60/384,964, that has  
8 the Filing Date of June 3, 2002, an entire copy of which is  
9 incorporated herein by reference. Using silica microspheres  
10 in a syntactic matrix provides the necessary buoyancy in high  
11 pressure wellbores. The high axial strength of the composite  
12 pipe construction compensates for variations in axial loads  
13 caused by mud weight and other density variations.  
14

15 In Figure 1, wires A, B, C, D, E, and F are 0.355 inches  
16 O.D. insulated No. 4 AWG Wire. The insulation is rated at  
17 14,000 volts DC, or 0-peak AC. Wires A, B, and C comprise  
18 the first independent three phase delta circuit. Wires D, E,  
19 and F comprise the second independent three phase delta  
20 circuit. Each separate circuit is capable of providing 160  
21 horsepower (119 kilowatts) over an umbilical length of 20  
22 miles at the temperature of 150 degrees C. So, combined,  
23 the umbilical can deliver a total of 320 horsepower  
24 (238 kilowatts) at 20 miles to do work at that distance.  
25 At 320 horsepower, less than 1 watt per foot of power is  
26 dissipated in the form of heat, which makes this a practical  
27 design even if the umbilical is completely wound up on an  
28 umbilical carousel as shown in a later figure (Figure 4). In  
29 this preferred embodiment, wires A, B, C, D, E, and F are  
30 No. 4 AWG stranded silver plated copper wire which are  
31 covered with insulation rated to 14,000 VDC at 200 degrees C,  
32 where each wire has a DC resistance of 0.250 ohms per 1000  
33 feet at the temperature of 20 degrees C, where the nominal  
34 outside diameter of each insulated wire is 0.355 inches, and

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 where each wire weighs 180 lbs/1000 feet. Each wire is Part  
2 Number FEP4FLEXSC provided by Allied Wire & Cable, Inc. which  
3 is located at 401 East 4th Street, Bridgeport, PA 19405,  
4 which may be reached by telephone at (800) 828-9473. The  
5 details on Allied Part Number FEP4FLEXSC may be reviewed in  
6 Attachment 27 to Provisional Patent Application Number  
7 60/384,964, that has the Filing Date of June 3, 2002, an  
8 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
9

10 If the inside pipe 6 is carrying 12 lb per gallon mud,  
11 and if the exterior pipe is immersed in 12 lb per gallon mud  
12 in the well, then the upward buoyant force in the above  
13 preferred embodiment of the umbilical is plus 5.9 lbs per  
14 1000 feet of this umbilical. Assuming a coefficient of  
15 friction of 0.2, the total frictional "pull-back" on 20 miles  
16 of this umbilical is only 124 lbs. This "pull-back" does not  
17 include any differential fluid drag forces. This umbilical  
18 was chosen to have an extreme length which shows that the  
19 essentially neutrally buoyant umbilical overcomes most  
20 friction problems associated with umbilicals disposed in  
21 wells. For the details of this calculation of a net upward  
22 force of 5.9 lbs as described above, please refer to "Case J"  
23 of Attachment 34 to Provisional Patent Application Number  
24 60/384,964, that has the Filing Date of June 3, 2002, an  
25 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
26 Those particular calculations were performed on the date of  
27 November 12, 2001. In these calculations, the density of  
28 water of 62.43 lbs/cubic foot was used to calculate the net  
29 forces acting on volumes having particular specific  
30 gravities. Please also see other relevant buoyancy  
31 calculations in Attachments 29 to 35 of Provisional Patent  
32 Application Number 60/384,964.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           The phrase "substantially neutrally buoyant",  
2           "essentially neutrally buoyant", "near neutral buoyant", and  
3           "approximately neutrally buoyant" may be used  
4           interchangeably. For a substantially neutrally buoyant  
5           umbilical, or near neutrally buoyant umbilical, the downward  
6           force of gravity on a section of the umbilical of a given  
7           length is approximately balanced out by the upward buoyant  
8           force of well fluid acting on the umbilical of that given  
9           length. The density of mud in the well is strongly  
10          influenced by any cuttings from any drilling machine attached  
11          to the umbilical (to be described later). Similarly, the  
12          density of the fluids inside pipe 6 may also be strongly  
13          influenced by any cuttings from the drilling machine  
14          (if reverse flow is used). So, the density of the drilling  
15          mud 4 and the density of fluids present within the pipe 8 may  
16          vary with distance along the length of the umbilical.  
17          However, at any position along the length of the umbilical  
18          which is disposed in the well, the umbilical may be designed  
19          to be "substantially neutrally buoyant", "essentially  
20          neutrally buoyant", "near neutral buoyant" or "approximately  
21          neutrally buoyant". In addition, using the design principles  
22          described herein, the entire length of the umbilical may be  
23          designed to be on average "substantially neutrally buoyant",  
24          "essentially neutrally buoyant", "near neutral buoyant", or  
25          "approximately neutrally buoyant" over the entire length of  
26          the umbilical that is disposed within a wellbore.

27  
28          An umbilical that is "substantially neutrally buoyant",  
29          "essentially neutrally buoyant", "near neutral buoyant", or  
30          "approximately neutrally buoyant" greatly reduces the  
31          frictional drag on the umbilical as it moves in the wellbore.  
32          That statement is evident from the following. The net  
33          force on a length of umbilical from gravity and buoyant  
34          forces is  $F$ . The coefficient of sliding friction is  $k$ .

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Therefore, the net "pull back force" P for the given length  
2 of the umbilical is given by:

$$P = F k$$

Equation 1.

3  
4  
5  
6 The requirement of a near neutrally buoyant umbilical  
7 greatly reduces the frictional drag on the umbilical as it  
8 moves in the wellbore. This is a particularly important  
9 point. If an umbilical is "substantially neutrally buoyant",  
10 "essentially neutrally buoyant", "near neutral buoyant", or  
11 "approximately neutrally buoyant" then the frictional drag on  
12 the umbilical is greatly reduced as it moves through the  
13 wellbore. There are other details to consider such as the  
14 starting friction, any sticky substances in the well, drag  
15 due to viscous forces, etc. However, Equation 1 forms the  
16 basis for providing high electrical power through umbilicals  
17 at great distances such as 20 miles from a drilling site. As  
18 stated before in relation to this preferred embodiment, with  
19 a net force on 1,000 feet of the umbilical being only plus  
20 5.9 lbs (an upward force), assuming a coefficient of friction  
21 of 0.2, the total frictional "pull-back" on 20 miles of this  
22 umbilical is only 124 lbs.

23  
24 The preferred embodiment also calls for other reasonable  
25 design requirements on the umbilical. The umbilical needs  
26 significant axial strength (to pull the drilling machine from  
27 the well in the event of equipment failure downhole as  
28 explained later) that would require a 160,000 lbs design  
29 load. The umbilical must provide an internal pressure  
30 capacity (shut-in pressure capacity of the well) of about  
31 10,000 psi. The collapse resistance of the umbilical must  
32 exceed a 6,000 psi differential pressure. The umbilical must  
33 have the ability to work in at least 120 degrees C, and  
34 preferably, 150 degrees C. Composites are now routinely used

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 at 120 degrees C, and experiments are now being conducted on  
2 composites at 150 degrees C. Hollow high-strength glass may  
3 replace carbon fiber composites for a cost savings, but there  
4 will be a weight penalty, thereby increasing frictional drag.  
5

6 The umbilical may occasionally be damaged during its use  
7 and require field repairs. Repairs will be accomplished by  
8 cutting out the damaged part and using field installable end  
9 connections to rejoin the intact umbilical sections. The end  
10 connections will also join various sections of umbilical that  
11 may be stored separately at the surface. These couplings are  
12 expected to slightly reduce the ID and increase the  
13 umbilical OD.  
14

15 The particular asymmetric design shown in Figure 1 was  
16 selected as a preferred embodiment in part because it  
17 illustrates the various considerations necessary to design  
18 and build such a high power umbilical that is neutrally  
19 buoyant in well fluids. Other more symmetric designs for  
20 such an umbilical are shown in another preferred embodiment  
21 shown in Figure 20 below. The references cited above in the  
22 section entitled "Description of the Related Art" provide the  
23 generally known methods used in the industry to construct  
24 composite umbilicals.  
25

26 **Figure 2** shows the uphole and downhole power management  
27 system for the composite umbilical shown in Figure 1. Wires  
28 A, B, and fiber optic cable 14, which were identified in  
29 Figure 1, are shown in Figure 2. In Figure 2, the surface of  
30 the earth is shown figurative as element 16. Any function  
31 shown above element 16 is identified as an "uphole function",  
32 and any function shown below element 16 is identified as a  
33 "downhole function".  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In Figure 2, only wires A and B of a first three phase  
2 delta circuit are shown. Three phase delta is an AC circuit  
3 having three wires (for example A, B, and C), each wire of  
4 which carries a an AC current, and there exists a voltage  
5 difference between each wire. There exists phase  
6 relationships between the current vs. time in each wire.  
7 There exits phase relationships between the voltage vs. time  
8 in each wire. However, in Figure 2, wire C is not shown for  
9 simplicity. Electrical generator 18 provides three phase  
10 delta power through cable 19 to variable voltage and  
11 frequency converter 20. The variable voltage and frequency  
12 converter possesses electronics that provides measurement of  
13 the voltages, currents and phases of the three phase delta  
14 circuit (although that electronics is not shown in Figure 2  
15 for the purposes of simplicity). Electrical power is  
16 delivered by wires A and B to the downhole electrical  
17 load 22. In one preferred embodiment, the electrical load is  
18 a downhole electric motor. The voltage, current, the  
19 relevant phases, and other parameters of the electrical load  
20 are measured with sensing unit 24. Sensing unit 24 is marked  
21 with the legend "V" indicating that at least the voltage V is  
22 measured between wires A and B at electrical load 22.  
23 Sensing unit 24 is attached to the electrical input terminals  
24 of the downhole electrical load. If this is a downhole  
25 electrical motor, the sensing unit 24 is attached to the  
26 electrical input terminals of the electric motor.

27  
28           Sensing unit 24 also possesses suitable electronics that  
29 sends the measured downhole information to the surface  
30 through optical fiber 14. The downhole information is sent  
31 by optical fiber 14 that provides the measured information to  
32 computer system 26. The measured downhole information is  
33 digitized with related instrumentation (not shown for the  
34 purposes of simplicity in Figure 2), and the downhole

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 information is forwarded uphole by light pulses sent through  
2 the optical fiber 14.

3  
4 In Figure 2, the computer system 26 also possesses  
5 related electronics to implement the following. The computer  
6 system and related electronics provides commands to the  
7 variable voltage and frequency converter 20 by electronic  
8 feedback loop 28 to provide the necessary voltage, current,  
9 phases, and frequency as required by the downhole load 22.  
10 Consequently, Figure 2 shows a closed-loop, dynamic feedback  
11 system, where downhole load parameters are measured, the  
12 information is sent uphole, and the uphole system is  
13 automatically adjusted to provide what is required to  
14 properly operate the electrical load. The point is that the  
15 feedback loop 28 from computer 20 is used to produce the  
16 required frequency, voltage, current and phases required by  
17 the downhole load 22. This is an example of the feedback  
18 control of the downhole load 22, which may be a downhole  
19 electric motor in several preferred embodiments.

20  
21 In an alternative embodiment of feedback control, the  
22 feedback loop from computer 26 in Figure 2 is used to control  
23 the RPM of a motor generator whose 0-peak output voltage may  
24 be easily varied, which provides conveniently controlled  
25 frequency and voltage outputs, although that minor variation  
26 of the preferred embodiment is not shown in a separate figure  
27 for the purposes of brevity. In this case, the feedback loop  
28 from computer 26 is first used to control the RPM of the  
29 motor, and is also used for the second purpose to control the  
30 output voltage, frequency, and phase from the generator  
31 attached to the motor which makes the motor generator  
32 assembly.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Additional measured downhole load parameters are also  
2 sent uphole through the optical fiber. For example, in one  
3 preferred embodiment, element 22 in Figure 2 is an electrical  
4 motor, and as an example, the measured RPM, the current drawn  
5 by the motor through its input terminals, the voltage across  
6 its input terminals, and the phases of the voltages and  
7 current vs. time, the temperature, torque, etc. of that  
8 electrical motor can be sent uphole through the optical  
9 fiber 14. In other preferred embodiments, the electrical  
10 load 22 is a submersible electric drilling machine, and in  
11 another embodiment, the electrical load is a remotely  
12 operated vehicle.

13  
14 The system shown in Figure 2 controls a first three  
15 phase delta circuit that energizes wires A, B, and C in  
16 Figure 1. A second similar system to that shown in  
17 Figure 2 controls the power derived to wires D, E and F from  
18 a second three phase delta circuit. For simplicity, the  
19 second three phase delta circuit is not shown in  
20 Figure 2. Such a system is capable of delivering 320  
21 horsepower through an umbilical disposed in a wellbore shown  
22 in Figure 1 that has a length of up to 20 miles. This is  
23 important, because most of the available motors for downhole  
24 use are AC motors, and are not DC motors.

25  
26 The AC power management system shown in Figure 2 has at  
27 least several advantages. First, DC voltages are not used  
28 which would generally require a "chopper" to convert DC to AC  
29 to operate most currently available downhole electric motors.  
30 Such high power choppers are complex, often large, and  
31 generate considerable heat. Second, no downhole transformer  
32 is necessary because of the active closed-loop feedback  
33 system shown in Figure 2.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           However, the basic feedback control of downhole  
2 parameters as such as voltage and current are also useful  
3 for a DC power management system for DC electric motors that  
4 can be used in a subterranean electric drilling machine.  
5 Accordingly, another preferred embodiment of the invention is  
6 controlling DC voltages with an analogous system as outlined  
7 in Figure 2.

8  
9           **Figure 3** shows how three phase power of 160 horsepower  
10 (119 kilowatts) can be delivered through the electrical  
11 conductors in Figures 1 and 2 to distances of 20 miles.  
12 This means that this power can be delivered from 0 miles to  
13 20 miles away from a drill site for example. Two "legs" of  
14 the three phase delta circuit are shown in Figure 3 as wires  
15 A and B (wire C of the three phase delta circuit is not shown  
16 for simplicity). The resistances of a length of 20 miles of  
17 the wire is simulated with resistors having the magnitude of  
18 resistance in ohms of "R1". The legend "R1" appears in  
19 Figure 3. These two resistors are also respectively labeled  
20 as elements 30 and 32. In a preferred embodiment, the load  
21 at the end of the umbilical is simulated with a downhole  
22 electric motor 34 requiring 2,500 volts 0-peak at 45 amps  
23 0-peak between any two wires of the three phase wiring system  
24 operating at 60 Hz. As a practical case, this "downhole  
25 motor" could in principle be comprised of two each REDA,  
26 4 Pole Motors, each requiring 1250 volts 0-peak, at 45 amps  
27 0-peak, having a nominal RPM of about 1700 RPM. The current  
28 flowing through wires A and B is represented by the legend  
29  $I(t)$  in Figure 3. This required motor voltage is represented  
30 by the legend  $V_M(t)$ . The closed-loop, dynamic feedback  
31 system described in Figure 2 automatically and continuously  
32 adjusts the voltage provided downhole to the motor that is  
33 measured with sensing unit 24 in Figure 2. In this preferred  
34 embodiment, typically, the variable voltage and frequency

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 converter 20 in Figure 2 provides 6,182 volts 0-peak and  
2 provides 45 amps 0-peak between any two legs of the three  
3 phase circuit. The supplied voltage is represented by  
4 element 36 in Figure 3. The voltage supplied by the voltage  
5 and frequency converter 20 is represented by the legend  $V_S(t)$   
6 in Figure 3. The point of this is that using the above  
7 described feedback system and reasonable gauge wiring, it is  
8 possible to actually deliver 160 horsepower (119 kilowatts)  
9 at a distance of 20 miles.

10  
11 Figure 3 shows a first independent circuit that provides  
12 2,500 volts 0-peak to a load, a motor in this preferred  
13 embodiment, at distances of up to 20 miles between wires A,  
14 B, and C respectively, and the motor may draw up to 45 amps  
15 0-peak between any pairs of wires, A-B, B-C, or C-A. A  
16 second independent circuit, that is not shown for simplicity,  
17 also provides 2,500 volts 0-peak to another motor at  
18 distances to 20 miles between wires D, E, and F respectively,  
19 and that motor may also draw up to 45 amps 0-peak from any  
20 wire D,E, and F. Such voltages and currents are necessary  
21 for two series operated REDA 4 Pole Motors, each rated for 80  
22 Horsepower (as shown in a later figure, Figure 8). REDA is a  
23 manufacturer called "Reda Div. Camco International, Inc."  
24 that may be reached at 4th & Dewey, Bartlesville, Oklahoma  
25 74005, having the telephone number of (918) 661-2000,  
26 that has a website that may be reached through  
27 [www.schlumberger.com](http://www.schlumberger.com).

28  
29 In summary, the umbilical 2 in Figure 1 must carry high  
30 power and high speed communications (320 hp - two circuits of  
31 160 hp each - and fiber optic communications). An A.C.  
32 voltage, transformerless, downhole electrical power  
33 arrangement is used. The input power and voltage are managed  
34 topside to maintain constant downhole load voltage. In one

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 preferred embodiment, one of the two circuits is dedicated to  
2 the downhole mud pump (or Smart Shuttle®) service, while the  
3 second circuit operates other Downhole Rig™ functions such as  
4 the rotation and weight loading of a drilling bit, which will  
5 be described in later figures. In various preferred  
6 embodiments, the various downhole motors feature soft start  
7 controls allowing the topside power supply to reliably track  
8 power demand.

9  
10 In the above preferred embodiment, a three phase delta  
11 power circuit is used. In principle, any electrical power  
12 system may be used including 208 Y and related power systems,  
13 and ordinary single phase power systems.

14  
15 **Figure 4** shows an umbilical carousel in the process of  
16 being constructed. This equipment is similar to flexible  
17 pipe handling equipment now used in the industry. A first  
18 carousel flange 38 possesses interior spokes 40 that forms  
19 the inside diameter of the umbilical carousel. Wound on  
20 those interior spokes is the umbilical 42. A second carousel  
21 flange (not shown) encloses the wound up umbilical, although  
22 it not shown in the interest of brevity. In one preferred  
23 embodiment, the umbilical 42 is the same umbilical as shown  
24 in Figure 1 that is 6 inches OD. The umbilical may be stored  
25 and operated as a single line. However, the umbilical is  
26 preferably divided into several smaller lengths, as an  
27 example 5 miles each, and stored on smaller carousals or  
28 drums to reduce the fluid friction losses as compared to one  
29 20-mile continuous length. A level wind is provided on each  
30 carousel to correctly wrap the pipe as it is pulled from the  
31 well and returned to the carousel for storage.

32  
33 Each carousel holding 5 miles of the 6 inch OD umbilical  
34 is approximately 8 ft tall with an outside diameter of 22 ft.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 The mud filled umbilical weighs approximately 234 tons.  
2 Unless this equipment is installed on offshore vessels, it is  
3 not easily moved. For this reason, drilling centers where  
4 the rig is assembled are expected to use the equipment over  
5 its useful life. Such carousals may be supplied by Coflexip  
6 Stena Offshore, Inc. located at 7660 Woodway, Suite 390,  
7 Houston, Texas 77063, having the telephone number  
8 (713) 789-8540, which has its website at [www.coflexip.com](http://www.coflexip.com).  
9 Such carousals may also be supplied by Oceaneering  
10 International, Inc. located at 11911 FM 529, Houston,  
11 Texas 77401, having telephone number (713) 329-4500, which  
12 has its website at [www.oceaneering.com](http://www.oceaneering.com).  
13

14 Much surface equipment is needed in support of handling  
15 the umbilical. This surface equipment is briefly described  
16 in the following. Much of this equipment may be supplied by  
17 a firm located in Holland called Huisman-Itrec, that may be  
18 located at Admiraal Trompstraat 2 - 3115 HH Schiedam, P.O.  
19 Box 150 - 3100 AD Schiedam, The Netherlands, Harbour No. 561,  
20 having the telephone number of 31(0) 10 245 22 22, that has  
21 its website at [www.Huisman-Itrec.com](http://www.Huisman-Itrec.com).  
22

23 Stripper heads and surface blow-out preventers (BOP's)  
24 provide an OD pressure seal to the umbilical, although no  
25 figures are provided to show this feature for simplicity.  
26 This equipment has a similar function to a coiled tubing  
27 stripper head, except it handles the larger umbilical OD  
28 sizes. In practice, the actual sealing element is expected  
29 to be dual 13 5/8" annular stripping BOPs with grease  
30 injection to lubricate the sealing elements as the umbilical  
31 moves through the sealing elements. This approach of dual  
32 stripping units allows the umbilical mechanical couplings to  
33 be transitioned into the well. The surface BOPs provide for  
34 surface well control in the event of a well kick. These

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 (shear, pipe & blind ram) BOPs will be located between the  
2 wellhead and the stripping annular units.  
3

4 An injector unit is required on the surface, although no  
5 figure is shown for simplicity. A 100-ton linear traction  
6 unit is preferred for this application. The injection unit  
7 provides drilling umbilical pushing and pulling loads at  
8 speeds to 10 feet per second. The maximum loads will be at  
9 low speeds. Speed will be limited by mudflows within the  
10 wellbore. This injector unit has a function similar to a  
11 coiled tubing injector but practically is closer in size and  
12 performance to a pipeline tensioner used to lay flexible  
13 pipe. Similar units are used for the handling and  
14 installation of flexible pipe by such firms as Coflexip Stena  
15 Offshore, Inc.; Wellstream, Inc.; and NKT Flexibles I/S. The  
16 address of Coflexip Stena Offshore, Inc. has been provided  
17 above. Wellstream, Inc. is a subsidiary of Halliburton  
18 Energy Services, and may be reached at 10200 Bellaire  
19 Boulevard, Houston, Texas 77072-5299, having the telephone  
20 number of (281) 575-4033. NKT Flexibles I/S is a firm  
21 located in Denmark having the address of Priorparken 510,  
22 DK-2605 Broendby, Denmark, having the telephone  
23 of 45 43 48 30 00, that has its website at  
24 [www.nktflexibles.com](http://www.nktflexibles.com).  
25

26 A surface mud system is required for the umbilical,  
27 although no figures showing this feature are provided for the  
28 sake of brevity. A large volume of working mud will be  
29 needed to manage the umbilical volume while tripping in the  
30 hole. For 20-mile offset operations, an active mud tank  
31 volume of 3,500 barrels may be required. This is similar to  
32 some large offshore drilling rigs in capacity. A minimum of  
33 two 750 hp surface mud pumps will be required for the  
34 preferred embodiment. The other details concerning the mud

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 system will be presented in relation to a forthcoming figure  
2 (Figure 14).

3  
4 A surface rig is needed to support umbilical and casing  
5 operations, although no figure is presented showing this  
6 detail in the interests of brevity. The surface rig handles  
7 and makes-up the casing as it is run into the hole. In many  
8 respects, it is similar to conventional coiled tubing  
9 drilling rigs, except it is much larger in size. During  
10 drilling operations, the best method for joining expandable  
11 casing is continuing to develop. Enventure Global Technology  
12 is developing an expandable threaded joint. Enventure also  
13 has commercially available various sizes of expandable pipes  
14 and can supply various means of joining lengths of the  
15 expandable pipe. Enventure Global Technology may be reached  
16 at 16200-A Park Row, Houston, Texas 77084, having the  
17 telephone number of (281) 492-5000, that has its website at  
18 www.EnventureGT.com. Other alternatives of joining  
19 expandable is to weld long casing strings (similar to J-  
20 laying pipelines). The arrangement of surface rig equipment  
21 is compatible with both alternatives.

22  
23 **Figure 5** shows a computerized uphole management system  
24 for the umbilical. It is a portion of a preferred embodiment  
25 of an automated system to drill and complete  
26 oil and gas wells. It is also a portion of a preferred  
27 embodiment of a closed-loop system to drill and complete oil  
28 and gas wells. Figure 5 shows the computer control of the  
29 umbilical carousel in a preferred embodiment of the  
30 invention.

31  
32 In Figure 5, computer system 26 (previously described in  
33 Figure 2) has typical components in the industry including  
34 one or more processors, one or more non-volatile memories,

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 one or more volatile memories, many software programs that  
2 can run concurrently or alternatively as the situation  
3 requires, etc., and all other features as necessary to  
4 provide computer control of all of the uphole functions. In  
5 this preferred embodiment, this same computer system 26 also  
6 has the capability to acquire data from, send commands to,  
7 and otherwise properly operate and control all downhole  
8 functions. Therefore LWD and MWD data is acquired by this  
9 same computer system when appropriate. As a consequence, in  
10 one preferred embodiment, the computer system 26 has all  
11 necessary components to interact with a subterranean electric  
12 drilling machine. In a "closed-loop" operation of the  
13 system, information obtained downhole from the downhole  
14 system is sent to the computer system that is executing a  
15 series of programmed steps, whereby those steps may be  
16 changed or altered depending upon the information received  
17 from the downhole sensor located within the downhole system.  
18

19 In Figure 5, the computer system 26 has a cable 44 that  
20 connects it to display console 46 that has one or more  
21 display screens. The display console 46 displays data,  
22 program steps, and any information required to operate the  
23 entire uphole and downhole system. The display console is  
24 also connected via cable 48 to alarm and communications  
25 system 50 that provides proper notification to crews that  
26 servicing is required. Data entry and programming console 52  
27 provides means to enter any required digital or manual data,  
28 commands, or software as needed by the computer system, and  
29 it is connected to the computer system via cable 54.  
30

31 In Figure 5, computer system 26 provides commands  
32 over cable 56 to the electronics interfacing system 58  
33 that has many functions. One function of the electronics  
34 interfacing system is to provide information to and from any

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 downhole load through cabling 60 that is connected to the  
2 slip-ring 62, as is typically used in the industry.  
3 Another function of the electronics interfacing system is to  
4 provide power to any downhole load through cabling 60 that is  
5 connected to the slip-ring 62. The slip-ring 62 is suitably  
6 mounted on the side of the assembled umbilical carousel 64 in  
7 Figure 5. Information provided to slip-ring 62 then proceeds  
8 to wires A, B, C, D, E, F, and G within the umbilical wound  
9 up on the umbilical carousel. The umbilical 66 proceeds to  
10 an sheave and tensioner device 68 and then the umbilical  
11 proceeds downward at location 70 towards the injection  
12 unit and on to the stripper heads and surface blow-out  
13 preventers (BOP's). The sheave an tensioner device 68 may  
14 place appropriate tension on the umbilical as required.  
15

16 In Figure 5, electronics interfacing system 58 also  
17 provides power and electronic control of the hydraulic  
18 system 72 that controls the umbilical carousel through the  
19 connector at location 74. Cabling 76 provides the electrical  
20 connection between the electronics interfacing system 58 and  
21 the hydraulic system 72 that controls the umbilical carousel.  
22 In addition, electronics interfacing system 58 has output  
23 cable 78 that provides commands and control to the drilling  
24 rig hardware control system 80 that controls various drilling  
25 rig functions and apparatus including the rotary drilling  
26 table motors, the mud pump motors, the pumps that control  
27 cement flow and other slurry materials as required, and all  
28 electronically controlled valves, and those functions are  
29 controlled through cable bundle 82 which has an arrow on it  
30 in Figure 5 to indicate that this cabling goes to these  
31 enumerated items.  
32

33 In relation to Figure 5, electronics interfacing  
34 system 58 also has cable output 84 to ancillary surface

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 transducer and communications control system 86 that provides  
2 any required surface transducers and/or communications  
3 devices required for communications with the downhole  
4 equipment. In a preferred embodiment, ancillary surface and  
5 communications system 86 provides acoustic transmitters and  
6 acoustic receivers as may be required to communicate to and  
7 from certain downhole equipment. The ancillary surface and  
8 communications system 86 is connected to the required  
9 transducers, etc. by cabling 88 that has an arrow in Figure 5  
10 designating that this cabling proceeds to those enumerated  
11 transducers and other devices as may be required. Electrical  
12 generator 18 provides three phase delta power to variable  
13 voltage and frequency converter 20 by cable 90. The output  
14 from the voltage and frequency converter 20 is provided by  
15 cable 92 to the electronics interfacing system 58. Power to  
16 wires A, B, C, D, E, F, and G, and signals to the fiber optic  
17 cable 14 (not shown in Figure 5, but which are defined in  
18 Figure 1) are provided from the electronics interfacing  
19 system 58 through cabling 60 that is connected to the slip-  
20 ring 62. The cabling 60 and the slip-ring provide  
21 the suitable electrical and fiber optic connections.  
22 Cabling 60 possesses connection to wires A, B, C, D, E, F,  
23 and G, and to the fiber optic cable 14. In certain preferred  
24 embodiments, there are two separated generators and voltage  
25 and frequency converters to independently control to first  
26 three phase delta system having wires A, B, and C, and the  
27 second three phase delta system having wires D, E, and F.

28  
29 With respect to Figure 5, and to the closed-loop system  
30 to drill and complete oil and gas wells, standard electronic  
31 feedback control systems and designs are used to implement  
32 the entire system as described above, including those  
33 described in the book entitled "Theory and Problems of  
34 Feedback and Control Systems", "Second Edition",

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 "Continuous(Analog) and Discrete(Digital)", by J.J. DiStefano  
2 III, A.R. Stubberud, and I.J. Williams, Schaum's Outline  
3 Series, McGraw-Hill, Inc., New York, New York, 1990, 512  
4 pages, an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by  
5 reference. Therefore, in Figure 5, the computer system 58  
6 has the ability to communicate with, and to control, all of  
7 the above enumerated devices and functions that have been  
8 described to this point.

9  
10 To emphasize one major point in Figure 5, computer  
11 system 26 has the ability to receive information from one  
12 or more downhole sensors for the closed-loop system to drill  
13 and complete oil and gas wells. This computer system  
14 executes a sequence of programmed steps, but those steps may  
15 depend upon information obtained from at least one sensor  
16 located within the downhole system. This computer system  
17 provides the automatic control of the umbilical and any  
18 uphole and downhole functions related to the deployment of  
19 that umbilical.

20  
21 **Figure 6** generally shows the subterranean electric  
22 drilling machine 94 that is disposed within a previously  
23 installed borehole casing 96 that is surrounded by existing  
24 downhole cement 98. The previously installed casing ends at  
25 location 100. The inside diameter of the previously  
26 installed casing is defined as "ID Casing", but this legend  
27 is not shown on Figure 6 for simplicity. The outside  
28 diameter of the previously installed casing is defined as  
29 "OD Casing", but this legend is not shown on Figure 6 for  
30 simplicity. The wall thickness of the previously installed  
31 casing is defined as "WT Casing", but this legend is not  
32 shown in Figure 6 for simplicity. The previously installed  
33 casing is located within a geological formation 102.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           As shown in Figure 6, the subterranean electric drilling  
2 machine is in the process of drilling a new borehole 104 into  
3 the geological formation. Pilot bit 106 is shown drilling  
4 the pilot hole 108. The OD of the pilot bit is defined as  
5 "OD Pilot Bit", but that legend is not shown in Figure 6 for  
6 brevity. The ID of the pilot hole is defined as "ID Pilot  
7 Hole", but that legend is not shown in Figure 6 for brevity.  
8 Undercutters 110 and 112 expand the new borehole to full  
9 diameter. The OD of the undercutters 110 and 112 when in the  
10 fully extended position is defined as "OD Undercutters", but  
11 that legend is not shown in Figure 6 for the purpose of  
12 brevity. The overall ID of the new borehole so drilled is  
13 defined to be "ID of New Hole", but that legend is not shown  
14 in Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity. The pilot bit 106  
15 and the undercutters 110 and 112 together form the entire  
16 "drill bit" of this assembly. This drill bit is an example  
17 of an "expandable drill bit", also called a "retrievable  
18 drill bit", that is also called a "retractable drill bit".  
19 The following references describe such drill bits: U.S.  
20 Patents: U.S. Patent No. 3,552,508, C.C. Brown, entitled  
21 "Apparatus for Rotary Drilling of Wells Using Casing as the  
22 Drill Pipe", that issued on 1/5/1971, an entire copy of which  
23 is incorporated herein by reference; U.S. Patent No.  
24 3,603,411, H.D. Link, entitled "Retractable Drill Bits", that  
25 issued on 9/7/1971, an entire copy of which is incorporated  
26 herein by reference; U.S. Patent No. 4,651,837, W.G.  
27 Mayfield, entitled "Downhole Retractable Drill Bit", that  
28 issued on 3/24/1987, an entire copy of which is incorporated  
29 herein by reference; U.S. Patent No. 4,962,822, J.H. Pascale,  
30 entitled "Downhole Drill Bit and Bit Coupling", that issued  
31 on 10/16/1990, an entire copy of which is incorporated herein  
32 by reference; and U.S. Patent No. 5,197,553, R.E. Leturno,  
33 entitled "Drilling with Casing and Retractable Drill Bit",  
34 that issued on 3/30/1993, an entire copy of which is

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 incorporated herein by reference. Some experts in the  
2 industry call this type of drilling technology to be  
3 "drilling with casing". For the purposes herein, the terms  
4 "retrievable drill bit", "retrievable drill bit means",  
5 "retractable drill bit" and "retractable drill bit means" may  
6 be used interchangeably. The combination of the pilot bit  
7 and retractable drill bit may also be replaced under certain  
8 circumstances with a bicenter drill bit. The retrievable  
9 drill bits and the bicenter bits are rotary drill bits.

10  
11 When the undercutters 110 and 112 are retracted into  
12 their closed positions, then they can be pulled through the  
13 unexpaded casing, and then the entire subterranean electric  
14 drilling machine can removed from the previously installed  
15 casing because in their retracted positions, the OD of the  
16 undercutters is less than the ID of the expandable casing  
17 and the ID of the previously installed casing. However, when  
18 the undercutters are in their extended position as shown in  
19 Figure 6, the subterranean electric drilling machine is used  
20 to drill the new borehole.

21  
22 The downhole electric motor 114 of the subterranean  
23 drilling machine obtains its electrical energy from umbilical  
24 116. The downhole electric motor 114 is a rotary motor.  
25 In one preferred embodiment, the umbilical is the lower end  
26 of the particular composite umbilical that is shown in  
27 Figure 1. Various electrical wires and connectors along the  
28 length of the subterranean electric drilling machine conduct  
29 electrical power from the umbilical to the downhole electric  
30 motor (which are designated figuratively by element 118 which  
31 is not shown in Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity).  
32 Downhole electric motor 114 also possesses internal sensors  
33 indicating the voltages between various inputs to the motor,  
34 the current drawn by various inputs to the motor, the power

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 consumed by the motor, the temperature of the motor, the RPM  
2 of the motor, the torque delivered by the motor, etc. That  
3 information is digitized, sent thorough suitable electrical  
4 circuitry and connectors along the length of subterranean  
5 drilling machine (designated figuratively by element 120  
6 which is not shown in Figure 6 for brevity), which digital  
7 information is then sent uphole through the fiber optical  
8 cable 14 within the umbilical in the form of  
9 suitable light pulses. Commands from the surface are also  
10 send downhole through the same bidirectional communications  
11 path. Such commands including changing RPM of the  
12 motor, etc.

13  
14 The downhole electric motor has an output shaft which is  
15 figuratively designated by element 122, which is not shown in  
16 Figure 6 for brevity. Electric motor output shaft 122  
17 proceeds through the swivel and seal unit 124 to turn rotary  
18 shaft 125 which in turn rotates the undercutters 110 and 112  
19 and the pilot bit 106. Rotary shaft 125 is also called the  
20 "drilling work string" or simply the "drill pipe". In this  
21 preferred embodiment, the undercutters 110 and 112, and the  
22 pilot bit 106 comprise the "drill bit". Therefore, in this  
23 preferred embodiment, electrical energy provided by umbilical  
24 116 to downhole electric motor 114 rotates the drill bit and  
25 bores the new borehole 104 into the geological formation.

26  
27 In Figure 6, expandable casing 126 generally surrounds  
28 rotary shaft 125. Expandable casing is described in various  
29 references in the above section entitled "Description of the  
30 Related Art". The initial OD of the expandable casing  
31 (before expansion) is defined to be "Initial OD of Expandable  
32 Casing", but that legend is not shown in Figure 6 for  
33 brevity. The initial ID of the expandable casing (before  
34 expansion) is defined to be "Initial ID of Expandable

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Casing", but that legend is not shown in Figure 6 for  
2 brevity. The initial wall thickness of the expandable casing  
3 (before expansion) is defined to be the "Initial WT of  
4 Expandable Casing", but that legend is not shown in Figure 6  
5 for brevity. The length of the expandable casing 126 is  
6 defined to be "Length of Expandable Casing", but that legend  
7 is not shown in Figure 6 for brevity. The Length of the  
8 Expandable Casing can be quite long, and in one preferred  
9 embodiment can be at least several thousand feet long. In  
10 such a situation, the length of the rotary shaft 125 would be  
11 approximately the same length.  
12

13 In Figure 6, the length of the submersible electric  
14 drilling machine is defined to be "Length of Submersible  
15 Electric Drilling Machine", but that legend is not shown in  
16 Figure 6 for brevity. The Length of the Expandable Casing  
17 can be much longer than the Length of Submersible Electric  
18 Drilling Machine. The broken lines 128 in Figure 6 indicate  
19 that the Length of the Expandable Casing can be quite long  
20 compared to the Length of the Submersible Electric Drilling  
21 Machine. The various elements in Figure 6 are not in  
22 proportion.  
23

24 In Figure 6, the expandable casing 126 is attached to  
25 the casing hanger 130. The casing hanger is shown in Figure  
26 7, and will be described in detail below. A portion of the  
27 casing hanger is surrounded by casing hanger seal 132. The  
28 casing hanger setting tool 134 is located within the casing  
29 hanger 130. When the new borehole 104 has been completed,  
30 the casing hanger setting tool 134 is used to expand the  
31 casing hanger so that it can make positive hydraulic and  
32 mechanical contact to the interior of the previously  
33 installed downhole casing that is adjacent to the casing  
34 hanger seal. Figure 10 below shows the casing hanger after

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 it has been expanded with the casing hanger setting tool, but  
2 that will be described in detail in relation to that Figure  
3 10. Figure 12 below also shows the casing hanger after it  
4 has been expanded with the casing hanger setting tool, but  
5 that will be described in detail in relation to that  
6 Figure 12.

7  
8 Drilling operations typically require means to  
9 directionally drill, means to determine the location and  
10 direction of drilling, and means to perform measurements of  
11 geological formation properties during the drilling  
12 operations. Tool section 136 provides the rotary steering  
13 device for directional drilling and the LWD/MWD  
14 instrumentation packages. Here LWD means "Logging While  
15 Drilling" and "MWD" means "Measurement While Drilling".  
16 Typically, MWD instrumentation provides at least the location  
17 and direction of drilling. The LWD instrumentation provides  
18 typical geophysical measurements which include induction  
19 measurements, laterolog measurements, resistivity  
20 measurements, dielectric measurements, magnetic resonance  
21 imaging measurements, neutron measurements, gamma ray  
22 measurements; acoustic measurements, etc. This information  
23 may be used to determine the amount of oil and gas within a  
24 geological formation. Power for this instrumentation is  
25 obtained from the umbilical 116.

26  
27 In Figure 6, various electrical wires and connectors  
28 along the length of the subterranean electric drilling  
29 machine conduct electrical power from the umbilical to the  
30 rotary steering device and to the MWD/LWD instrumentation  
31 (which are designated figuratively by element 138 which are  
32 not shown in Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity). The  
33 sensors on the direction steering device and the MWD and LWD  
34 instrumentation provide information that is digitized, sent

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 thorough suitable electrical circuitry and connectors along  
2 the length of subterranean drilling machine (designated  
3 figuratively by element 139 which is not shown in Figure 6  
4 for brevity), which digital information is then sent uphole  
5 through the fiber optical cable 14 within the umbilical in  
6 the form of suitable light pulses. Commands from the surface  
7 are also send downhole through the same bidirectional  
8 communications path. For example, commands to change the  
9 direction of drilling may be sent downhole through this  
10 bidirectional communications path.

11  
12 In Figure 6, first anchor and weight on bit mechanism  
13 (AWOBM) 140 and second anchor and weight on bit mechanism  
14 (AWOBM) 142 selectively anchor the subterranean electric  
15 drilling machine and provide suitable weight on bit for  
16 drilling purposes. First AWOBM possesses anchor means 144  
17 and 146. Second AWOBM possesses anchor means 148 and 150.  
18 This is an example of a tandem anchor system. In one  
19 preferred embodiment, the tandem anchor means 144, 146, 148  
20 and 150 are comprised of inflatable packer-like elements.

21  
22 In Figure 6, first shaft 152 couples second AWOBM to the  
23 downhole electric motor 114. In one preferred embodiment,  
24 the first shaft 152 is of fixed length. In another preferred  
25 embodiment, first shaft 152 is an extensible shaft. Mud flow  
26 channel 154 is shown in Figure 6 that will be more fully  
27 described later.

28  
29 In Figure 6, second shaft 156 couples the first AWOBM to  
30 the second AWOBM. Second shaft 156 is an extensible shaft.  
31 In one preferred embodiment, first AWOBM can move itself with  
32 respect to one end of the second shaft 156, and second AWOBM  
33 can also move itself with respect to the opposite end of  
34 shaft 156. In one embodiment, simple electric motor operated

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 threaded screws and nuts suitably coupled to second shaft 156  
2 are used to provide such motion. Those threaded screws,  
3 nuts, and electric motors are not shown in Figure 6 for the  
4 propose of simplicity. For other examples of related  
5 mechanisms, please refer to the following references:

6 (a) Roy Marker, et al., in the paper entitled "Anaconda:  
7 Joint Development Project Leads to Digitally Controlled  
8 Composite Coiled Tubing Drilling System", SPE 60750,  
9 presented at the SPE/ICoTA Coiled Tubing Roundtable,  
10 Houston, Texas, April 5-6, 2000, and particularly in  
11 Figure 8 entitled "Tractor-driven BHA", an entire copy of  
12 which is incorporated herein by reference; and (b) U.S.  
13 Patent No. 5,794,703 that issued on August 18, 1998 that is  
14 entitled "Wellbore Tractor and Method of Moving an Item  
15 Through a Wellbore", an entire copy of which is incorporated  
16 herein by reference.

17  
18 First anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 140 and  
19 second anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 142 provide  
20 extension mechanisms with electric powered assemblies that  
21 are used to advance the casing and provide bit weight during  
22 drilling operations. These mechanisms also resist the  
23 drilling torque of the bit by anchoring the rotary motor.  
24 In a preferred embodiment, the anchor packers are inflated  
25 and deflated with motor driven progressing cavity pumps..  
26 Using dedicated PCPs simplifies controls and valves to  
27 operate the mechanism.

28  
29 First anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 140 and  
30 second anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 142  
31 are high strength anchor assemblies which provide axial load  
32 capacity at a relative slow axial advance rate. Should the  
33 suspended casing weight (in the vertical wellbore) during  
34 casing running procedures exceed the umbilical strength

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 rating, then this mechanism may be used to lower the casing  
2 into the near horizontal wellbore.

3  
4 In Figure 6, various electrical wires and connectors  
5 along the length of the subterranean electric drilling  
6 machine conduct electrical power from the umbilical to the  
7 first anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 140 and to  
8 the second anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 142  
9 (which are designated figuratively by element 160 which are  
10 not shown in Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity). The  
11 first anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 140 and  
12 second anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 142 have  
13 many sensors including force sensors, torque sensors,  
14 position sensors, speed sensors, etc. Information from these  
15 sensors are sent thorough suitable electrical circuitry and  
16 connectors along the length of subterranean drilling machine  
17 (designated figuratively by element 162 which is not shown in  
18 Figure 6 for brevity), which digital information is then sent  
19 uphole through the fiber optical cable 14 within the  
20 umbilical in the form of suitable light pulses. Commands  
21 from the surface can also be sent downhole through this  
22 bidirectional communications path. For example, detailed  
23 commands can be sent to change the locations of first AWOBM  
24 140 and second AWOBM 142 or to change the effective load  
25 placed on the drilling bit by these mechanisms.

26  
27 In Figure 6, first mud cuttings and bypass port  
28 (MCBP) 164 allows mud and drill cuttings to pass by the  
29 first AWOBM 140. Second mud cutting and bypass port  
30 (MCBP) 166 allows mud and drill cutting to pass by the second  
31 AWOBM 142. These are electrically operated ports. Various  
32 electrical wires and connectors along the length of the  
33 subterranean electric drilling machine conduct electrical  
34 power from the umbilical to the first MCBP and to the second

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 MCBP (which are designated figuratively by element 168 which  
2 are not shown in Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity). The  
3 first MCBP and to the second MCBP have many sensors providing  
4 temperature, pressure, etc. The information from these  
5 sensors are sent through suitable electrical circuitry and  
6 connectors along the length of subterranean drilling machine  
7 (designated figuratively by element 170 which is not shown in  
8 Figure 6 for brevity), which digital information is then sent  
9 uphole through the fiber optical cable 14 within the  
10 umbilical in the form of suitable light pulses. Commands  
11 from the surface can also be sent downhole through this  
12 bidirectional communications path. For example, detailed  
13 commands can be sent to close first MCBP and to the second  
14 MCBP to prevent a well blow-out.

15  
16 In Figure 6, mud carrying shaft 172 is attached to the  
17 first AWOBM by housing 174. The female side of universal mud  
18 and electrical connector 176 is attached to the male side of  
19 universal mud and electrical connector 178. Progressing  
20 cavity pump 180 is driven by a downhole pump motor assembly  
21 generally designated by element 182. A progressing cavity  
22 pump is abbreviated as a "PCP". Progressing cavity pump 180  
23 also includes an integral flexible shaft as is typical in the  
24 industry. In one preferred embodiment, the downhole pump  
25 motor assembly generally designated by element 182 is  
26 comprised of protector 184; first 80 horsepower electric  
27 motor 186 requiring 1250 volts at 45 amps that runs at the  
28 nominal RPM of 1700 RPM; second 80 horsepower electric motor  
29 188 requiring 1250 volts at 45 amps that also runs at the  
30 nominal RPM of 1700 RPM; universal motor base 190; gearbox  
31 protector 192; and gearbox 194 having a 4:1 reduction. The  
32 downhole pump motor assembly and a portion of the progressing  
33 cavity pump 180 is covered by shroud 196.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           Various electrical wires and connectors along the length  
2 of the subterranean electric drilling machine conduct  
3 electrical power from the umbilical to the downhole pump  
4 motor assembly (which are designated figuratively by element  
5 198 which are not shown in Figure 6 for the purposes of  
6 brevity). The subterranean electric drilling machine has  
7 has many sensors including voltage sensors, current sensors,  
8 torque sensors, temperature sensors, RPM sensors, etc. The  
9 information from these sensors are sent thorough suitable  
10 electrical circuitry and connectors along the length of  
11 subterranean drilling machine (designated figuratively by  
12 element 200 which is not shown in Figure 6 for brevity),  
13 which digital information is then sent uphole through the  
14 fiber optical cable 14 within the umbilical in the form of  
15 suitable light pulses. Commands from the surface can also be  
16 sent downhole through this bidirectional communications path.  
17 For example, detailed commands can be sent to change the  
18 the RPM of first electric motor 186 and second electric  
19 motor 188.

20  
21           Figure 6 also shows three-way valve 202. This three-way  
22 valve is used to change the direction of mud flow inside the  
23 subterranean electric drilling machine. The functions of the  
24 three way 202 valve will be described below.

25  
26           Figure 6 also shows umbilical mud valve 204. This mud  
27 valve is used to shut off mud flow, or otherwise prevent well  
28 blow-outs. The mud valve 204 has a total of three positions:  
29 (a) open, namely it allows mud to flow through as shown in  
30 Figure 6; (b) stop (not allow any mud to flow straight  
31 through); and (c) vent to the annulus between the umbilical  
32 116 and the ID of the previously installed casing 212 so that  
33 cement or cuttings can be cleaned from within the umbilical  
34 (which state is not shown in Figure 6 for simplicity).

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Various electrical wires and connectors along the length  
2 of the subterranean electric drilling machine conduct  
3 electrical power from the umbilical to three-way valve 202  
4 and to the umbilical mud valve 204 (which are designated  
5 figuratively by element 206 which are not shown in  
6 Figure 6 for the purposes of brevity). The three-way valve  
7 202 and the umbilical mud valve 204 possess many sensors  
8 including pressure sensors, voltage sensors, current sensors,  
9 and temperature sensors, etc. The information from these  
10 sensors are sent thorough suitable electrical circuitry and  
11 connectors along the length of subterranean drilling machine  
12 (designated figuratively by element 208 which is not shown in  
13 Figure 6 for brevity), which digital information is then sent  
14 uphole through the fiber optical cable 14 within the  
15 umbilical in the form of suitable light pulses. Commands  
16 from the surface can also be sent downhole through this  
17 bidirectional communications path. For example, detailed  
18 commands can be sent to change set the three-way valve 202  
19 into any position, or to close, or open, umbilical valve 204.  
20

21 In addition, Smart Shuttle® seal 210 is shown in  
22 Figure 6. Smart Shuttle seal 210 is attached to a portion of  
23 shroud 180. For the purposes of succinct reference within  
24 this disclosure, the above entire list of Provisional Patent  
25 Applications, the U.S. Patents that have issued, the Pending  
26 U.S. Patent Applications that appear under the title of  
27 "Cross-References to Related Applications", the foreign  
28 pending Patent Applications under "Related PCT Applications",  
29 and the above U.S. Disclosure Documents under of "Related  
30 U.S. Disclosure Documents", all having William Banning Vail  
31 III as at least one of the inventors, is owned by the firm  
32 Smart Drilling and Completion, Inc. ("SDCI"), and therefore  
33 this intellectual property is defined herein to be the "SDCI  
34 Intellectual Property" or simply "SDCI IP" as an

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 abbreviation. Smart Drilling and Completion, Inc. may be  
2 reached at 3123 - 198th Place S.E., Bothell, Washington  
3 98012, having the telephone number of (425) 486-8789, that  
4 has the website of [www.Smart-Drilling-and-Completion.com](http://www.Smart-Drilling-and-Completion.com).  
5 The Smart Shuttle is extensively described in the above  
6 defined "SDCI IP". The principal of operation of the Smart  
7 Shuttle is also described below in relation to Figure 24.  
8 The shroud 196 extends to the left in Figure 6 so that the  
9 Smart Shuttle® seal 210 is installed on a portion of that  
10 shroud.

11  
12 In a preferred embodiment shown in Figure 6. A reverse  
13 mud circulation system has been configured with the umbilical  
14 in the wellbore. Fresh mud travels from the surface down the  
15 annuli between the well casing and the umbilical designated  
16 by element 212. The right-hand side of Figure 6 is "down" in  
17 Figure 6. Fresh mud travels down from the surface as  
18 indicated by various arrows throughout the subterranean  
19 drilling machine. Clean mud then flows through the interior  
20 of the shroud 214 to the three-way valve 202. In one  
21 preferred embodiment, the three-way valve directs mud into  
22 the input of the progressing cavity pump so that the pump  
23 boosts the pressure of the mud delivered to the drill bit.  
24 This is called "Position A" of the three-way mud valve. The  
25 detailed tubing and other hardware necessary to accomplish  
26 the details of "Position A" is not shown in Figure 6 for the  
27 purpose of simplicity. In "Position A", clean mud then flows  
28 through the interior of the male side of universal mud and  
29 electrical connector 178; then through the female side of  
30 universal mud and electrical connector 176; then through mud  
31 carrying shaft 172; then through mud flow channel 158; then  
32 through the interior of second shaft 156; then through mud  
33 flow channel 154; then through the interior of first shaft  
34 152; then through the swivel and seal unit 124; then through

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 rotary shaft 125; and then through the mud channels in pilot  
2 bit 108.

3  
4 In Figure 6, cuttings laden mud then returns to the  
5 surface through the following path. The cuttings laden mud  
6 flows up between the outside diameter of the expandable  
7 casing 126 and the inside diameter of the new borehole 104;  
8 then through the second mud cutting and bypass port (MCBP)  
9 166; then through the first mud cuttings and bypass port  
10 (MCBP) 164; then through the volume between the exterior of  
11 the shroud 196 and the ID of the previously installed  
12 borehole casing 96; then through cross-over system 216; and  
13 then into umbilical 116 and through the umbilical mud valve  
14 204 and then to the surface of the earth through the  
15 remainder of the umbilical disposed in the wellbore.

16  
17 Cuttings laden mud returns to the surface flowing  
18 through the ID of the umbilical. The purpose is to keep the  
19 wellbore clean. The subterranean electric drilling machine  
20 94 may be recovered to the surface while cuttings and mud  
21 fill the umbilical. Time to circulate the umbilical clean is  
22 not needed prior to tripping out of the hole.

23  
24 In the preferred embodiment illustrated in Figure 6, the  
25 clean mud is provided a booster pressure to improve bit  
26 hydraulics. If a bit is selected that produces fine  
27 cuttings, the PCP mud pump is compatible with pumping the  
28 cuttings filled mud. In an alternative design, the benefit  
29 for pumping the cuttings is a reduction in backpressure held  
30 on the geological formation.

31  
32 In Figure 6, there are two other positions of the three  
33 way-valve 202, "Position B", and "Position C". In  
34 "Position B" of the three-way valve, the PCP pump 180 is not

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 used to boost the mud pressure delivered through the mud  
2 channels of the pilot bit 108. Here, clean mud flows through  
3 the interior of the shroud 214 to the three-way valve 202,  
4 and then directly into the male side of universal mud and  
5 electrical connector 178 and through the remaining portions  
6 of the subterranean electric drilling machine to the mud  
7 channels of the pilot bit 108. The detailed configuration of  
8 pipes and other related hardware to accomplish this mode of  
9 operation is not shown in Figure 6 for the purpose of  
10 brevity.

11  
12 In Figure 6, Position C of the three-way valve 202  
13 allows the entire subterranean drilling machine to move  
14 within the previously installed borehole casing 96. The  
15 fluid filled region defined between the subterranean drilling  
16 machine and the interior of the previously installed borehole  
17 casing is designated by element 218 in Figure 6. As  
18 previously stated, the fluid filled region defined between  
19 the inside of the previously installed casing and the outside  
20 diameter of the umbilical, which is the annuli between the  
21 well casing and the umbilical, is designated by element 212.  
22 In "Position C" of the three-way valve 202, fluids are pumped  
23 from the region 218 into region 212. If there is a good seal  
24 between the exterior of the umbilical and the borehole at the  
25 surface produced by the stripper heads and surface blow-out  
26 preventers (BOP's), then the existence of the Smart Shuttle®  
27 seal 210 causes the subterranean drilling machine to go down  
28 into the well. Reversing the PCP, causes the subterranean  
29 electric drilling machine to reverse direction. For a more  
30 detailed description of the operation of a Smart Shuttle,  
31 please refer to the above defined "SDCI IP", entire copies of  
32 which are incorporated herein by reference. "Position C" of  
33 the three-way valve 202 provides an important function to  
34 rapidly trip the subterranean electric drilling machine to

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 the surface and back should any drilling component need  
2 maintenance or replacement. This capability provides  
3 operational flexibility for the system. Based upon existing  
4 designs with currently available downhole electric motors and  
5 progressing cavity pumps, practical speeds of 10 feet per  
6 second can be anticipated while pulling a load of at least  
7 4,000 lbs.

8  
9 In Figure 6, the fluid filled region between the casing  
10 hanger seal 132 and the pilot bit 106 is designated by  
11 element 220. During drilling operations, the mud pressure in  
12 region 212 is defined to be P1; the mud pressure in the  
13 interior of the shroud defined by element 214 is P2; the mud  
14 pressure at the input to the three-way valve 202 is P3; the  
15 mud pressure within the male side of universal mud and  
16 electrical connector 178 is P4; the mud pressure inside the  
17 mud channels of the pilot bit 108 is P5; the pressure within  
18 region 220 is P5; the pressure within region 218 is P6; and  
19 the pressure within the umbilical 116 is P6.

20  
21 The subterranean electric drilling machine in  
22 Figure 6 provides other benefits. Since the anchor points  
23 secure the drilling machine in the well's casing and mudflow  
24 paths must pass through valves within the machine, the entire  
25 unit serves the function of a downhole packer with safety  
26 valve and serves as a BOP located downhole, or Downhole BOP™.  
27 The BOP is comprised of first mud cuttings and bypass port  
28 (MCBP) 164, second mud cutting and bypass port (MCBP) 166,  
29 and the umbilical mud valve 204 provide the required  
30 functions of a BOP located downhole.

31  
32 It is also worthwhile to make a few more comments about  
33 the downhole electric motor 114. This electric motor rotates  
34 the drilling bit. This electric motor may possess a gearbox

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 to match the bit's speed requirements. Monitoring the  
2 motor's power, RPM, torque, current drawn, voltage drawn  
3 etc., provides significant information about the condition of  
4 the bit and its drilling performance. As one particular  
5 example, the electric motor is chosen to be a REDA  
6 4 pole, 80 horsepower, electric motor requiring 1250 volts  
7 at 45 amps that runs at the nominal RPM of 1700 RPM that  
8 is 5.4 inches OD and 31.5 inches long. The RPM of this motor  
9 may be conveniently varied by varying the frequency of the  
10 voltage applied to it as is indicated by Figure 2 and the  
11 related description. In one preferred embodiment, the RPM of  
12 the electric motor in the subterranean electric drilling  
13 machine is varied between about 900 RPM to 2,500 RPM.  
14 In this one preferred embodiment, the particular REDA motor  
15 does not need a gearbox for this application. In another  
16 preferred embodiment, two such REDA motors are operated in  
17 series that provide a net downhole motor capable of providing  
18 160 horsepower to a rotating drill bit at the rotation speed  
19 between 900 RPM and 2,500 RPM. The RPM and other parameters  
20 of the downhole motor are controlled by computer system 26 in  
21 Figure 5. Another preferred embodiment uses the electric  
22 motor described in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 498,720 filed  
23 on August 17, 2001 that is entitled in part "Electric Motor  
24 Powered Rock Drill Bit Having Inner and Outer Counter-  
25 Rotating Cutters and Having Expandable/Retractable Outer  
26 Cutters to Drill Boreholes into Geological Formations",  
27 an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
28

29 The drilling fluid transitions from a nonrotating  
30 element which is first shaft 152, into a rotating pipe that  
31 is rotary shaft 125. The swivel and seal unit 124  
32 prevents fluid leaks in this area. Unlike a swivel-packing  
33 gland, this seal operates at a relative low differential  
34 pressure. Suitable rotating seal assemblies are commercially

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 available for these conditions. Electric power and  
2 communications from the fixed (non-rotating) components to  
3 the rotating assembly is required. An inductive connection  
4 or a slip-ring assembly will provide the power, communication  
5 and control linkage through the swivel and seal unit 124 to  
6 the fiber optic communication system and the power available  
7 through the umbilical. However, the details for either the  
8 inductive connection or slip-ring assembly are not shown in  
9 Figure 6 in the interests of simplicity.

10  
11 Figure 6 as described above drills the borehole with the  
12 long section of expandable casing 126 carried into the new  
13 hole 104 as the new hole is drilled. However, in  
14 an alternative preferred embodiment, a short section of  
15 expandable pipe 126 is used to drill the borehole, then the  
16 subterranean electric drilling machine is retrieved from the  
17 wellbore, and then that machine conveys into the well the  
18 long section of expandable casing 126 to be cemented and  
19 expanded into place within the new borehole 104.

20  
21 Figure 6 as described, uses the pilot bit 106 and the  
22 two undercutters 110 and 112 as the "drill bit" to drill the  
23 new borehole 104. However, a bicenter bit as is used in the  
24 industry could also be used as the "drill bit" in Figure 6,  
25 provided it had suitable dimensions to be withdrawn through  
26 the ID of the unexpanded state of the expandable casing 126,  
27 and through the interior of the previously installed borehole  
28 casing 96.

29  
30 In relation to Figure 1, wires A, B, and C comprise the  
31 first independent three phase delta circuit. Wires D, E, and  
32 F comprise the second independent three phase delta circuit.  
33 Each separate circuit is capable of providing 160 horsepower  
34 (119 kilowatts) over an umbilical length of 20 miles.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 In relation to Figure 6, and in one preferred embodiment, the  
2 first independent three phase delta circuit provides up to  
3 160 horsepower to the downhole electric motor 114. In  
4 relation to Figure 6, and in one preferred embodiment, the  
5 second independent three phase delta circuit provides up to  
6 160 horsepower to the downhole pump motor assembly 182 in  
7 Figure 6. In one preferred embodiment, each first and second  
8 circuit are independently controlled. So, combined, the  
9 umbilical shown in Figure 1 can deliver a total of 320  
10 horsepower (238 kilowatts) at 20 miles to do work at that  
11 distance.  
12

13 **Figure 7** shows the casing hanger 130. The casing hanger  
14 was identified with element 130 in Figure 6. A portion of  
15 the casing hanger is surrounded by casing hanger seal 132.  
16 The casing hanger seal was also previously identified with  
17 element 132 in Figure 6.  
18

19 The expandable casing 126 shown in Figure 6 is attached  
20 to the casing hanger 130. In one embodiment, the casing  
21 hanger is attached to the expandable casing by a threaded  
22 joint. In this embodiment, that threaded joint appears at  
23 end of casing hanger 222, although the threads on the casing  
24 hanger are not shown in Figure 7 for simplicity. The  
25 opposite end of the casing hanger is shown as element 223.  
26 In another preferred embodiment, the casing hanger can be  
27 manufactured integral with the expandable casing. A cement  
28 flowby port 224 is used during the cementing process as  
29 further explained in relation to Figure 10. The expandable  
30 hanger contact area is generally designated as element 226  
31 in Figure 7. The length of the expandable hanger contact  
32 area is designated by the legend L1 in Figure 7.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           **Figure 8** shows more detail for the downhole pump motor  
2 assembly that is related to element 182 in Figure 6.  
3 Elements 180, 184, 186, 188, 190, 192 and 194 were previously  
4 identified in Figure 6. Those same elements are related to  
5 the elements appearing in the following.

6  
7           Figure 8 generally shows a downhole pump motor assembly  
8 identified as element 228 which is configured as a Smart  
9 Shuttle®. In one preferred embodiment, various parts from  
10 REDA are used to make a downhole pump motor assembly 182.  
11 REDA may be located as defined above. In the embodiment,  
12 element 230 is a REDA protector for a bottom drive motor that  
13 is 5.4 inches OD, and 4.5 feet long. In this embodiment,  
14 element 232 is a first REDA 4 pole, 80 horsepower, electric  
15 motor requiring 1250 volts at 45 amps that runs at the  
16 nominal RPM of 1700 RPM that is 5.4 inches OD and 31.5 inches  
17 long. Element 234 is a power cable providing electrical  
18 power to the downhole pump motor assembly 228. In this  
19 embodiment, element 236 is a second REDA 4 pole, 80  
20 horsepower, electric motor requiring 1250 volts at 45 amps  
21 that runs at the nominal RPM of 1700 RPM that is 5.4 inches  
22 OD and 31.5 inches long. Element 238 is a REDA universal  
23 motor base part number UMB-B1 for a bottom drive motor that  
24 is 5.4 inches OD and 1.7 feet long. Element 240 is REDA  
25 gearbox protector part number BSBSB having 4 mechanical seals  
26 that is 5.4 inches OD and 10.6 feet long. Element 242 is a  
27 REDA gearbox having a 4:1 gear reduction that is 6.8 inches  
28 OD and 10.9 feet long. Element 244 is a Netzsch flexible  
29 shaft that is 7.87 inches OD and 10 feet long. Netzsch  
30 Oilfield Products is located at 119 Pickering Way, Exton,  
31 Pennsylvania 19341, having the telephone number of (610)  
32 363-8010, that has the website of [www.netzchusa.com](http://www.netzchusa.com).  
33 Element 248 is a Netzsch progressing cavity pump part number  
34 NM090\*3L (EX) that is 7.87 inches OD and 11.8 feet long.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Element 248 is a crossover. Element 250 is 4 inch tubing.  
2 Element 252 is a Smart Shuttle seal. Element 254 is an  
3 intake port into the Netzsch progressing cavity pump.  
4 Element 256 is the discharge outlet from the Netzsch  
5 progressing cavity pump.  
6

7 The downhole pump motor assembly identified as element  
8 228 needs a cablehead, centralizers, bypass valves, sensors,  
9 and intelligent controls to make one embodiment of a Smart  
10 Shuttle®. Such a Smart Shuttle will have a minimum pulling  
11 force of 4400 lbs, a maximum transit speed of 11 feet per  
12 second, that operates within 9 5/8 inch O.D., 53.5 lb/foot  
13 casing. It has variable speed, is reversible, and has high  
14 speed bidirectional communications with instrumentation on the  
15 surface of the earth.  
16

17 **Figure 9** shows a subterranean electric drilling machine  
18 boring a new borehole from an offshore platform. Figure 9  
19 shows the subterranean electric drilling machine 94 deployed  
20 within a previously installed borehole casing 96 that is  
21 surrounded by existing downhole cement 98 that is in the  
22 process of drilling the new borehole 104 into geological  
23 formation 102, which elements were previously defined in  
24 relation to Figure 6. Also shown in Figure 9 is the  
25 expandable casing 126 that was also defined in  
26 Figure 6. The subterranean electric drilling machine was  
27 thoroughly described in Figure 6.  
28

29 In Figure 9, an offshore platform 258 has a hoisting  
30 mechanism 260 that is surrounded by ocean 262 that is  
31 attached to the bottom of the ocean 264. The ocean surface  
32 is shown by element 265. Riser 266 is attached to blow-out  
33 preventer 268. Surface casing 270 is cemented into place  
34 with cement 272. A section of previously installed casing

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 274 extends from the lower portion of the surface casing 270  
2 to the previously installed borehole casing 96. The broken  
3 line 276 shows that the section of previously installed  
4 casing 274 can be many thousands of feet long. Previously  
5 installed casing 274 may actually be comprised of different  
6 lengths of casings having different inside diameters, outside  
7 diameters, and weights, but that detail is not shown in  
8 Figure 9 in the interest of simplicity. Other conductor  
9 pipes, surface casings, intermediate casings, liner strings,  
10 or other pipes may be present, but they are not shown for  
11 simplicity. The upper portion of the umbilical 278 proceeds  
12 to the stripper heads and surface blow-out preventers  
13 (BOP's), then proceeds to location 70 in Figure 5, and  
14 is then wound up on the umbilical carousel 64 in  
15 Figure 5. In this preferred embodiment, the computerized  
16 uphole management system for the umbilical as shown Figure 5  
17 is mounted on the offshore platform. In Figure 9, other  
18 geological formations represented by element 280 are located  
19 above geological formation 102. Other geological formations  
20 represented by element 282 are below geological  
21 formation 102.

22  
23 In Figure 9, the directions of the arrows show the mud  
24 flow. Fresh mud travels from the surface down the annuli  
25 between the well casing and the umbilical designated by  
26 element 212. Element 212 was previously defined in  
27 Figure 6. Cuttings laden mud returns to the offshore  
28 platform 258 on the interior of the umbilical 283. The  
29 arrows show the mud flow pattern in the vicinity of the  
30 subterranean electric drilling machine 94. This mud flow  
31 system is called a "reverse mud flow system". This reverse  
32 mud flow system will keep the cuttings within the umbilical,  
33 therefore preventing any debris from accumulating in the  
34 annuli between the well casing and the umbilical that might

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 prevent the subterranean electric drilling machine from  
2 returning to the offshore platform. In other preferred  
3 embodiments, the mud flow can be opposite - namely, clean mud  
4 flows down the interior of the umbilical, and cuttings laden  
5 mud flows up the annuli between the well casing and the  
6 umbilical.

7  
8 For the purposes of this invention, the phrase  
9 "offshore platform" includes the following: (a) bottom  
10 anchored structures that include artificial islands, gravity  
11 based structures, piled truss structures (conventional  
12 platforms), and compliant towers; (b) mobile-bottom sitting  
13 structures that include submersible structures including  
14 submersible barges (in swampy and shallow water areas),  
15 mobile gravity base structures (like the concrete islands  
16 in the Arctic) and jackup platforms; (c) floating-permanently  
17 moored structures including the tension leg platforms (TLP),  
18 the SPAR and Semisubmersible, and the Floating Production,  
19 Storage, and Offloading structures (FPSO); and (d) floating-  
20 mobile structures such as shipshape-like drilling rigs,  
21 semisubmersibles that are catenary moored, and barges.

22  
23 It is helpful to review how Figures 6, 7, 8, and 9  
24 relate to the drilling process. As was shown in Figure 6,  
25 the expandable casing 126 in its un-expanded state is carried  
26 into the hole as an outer sheath over rotary shaft 125 and  
27 associated components, which may also be called a "drilling  
28 work string". At the lower end of that borehole assembly  
29 ("BHA") is anchored into the casing. In one preferred  
30 embodiment, the string of expandable casing is 3,000 ft long.

31  
32 Starting with the drilling machine out of the hole, the  
33 expandable casing is run in and suspended in the wellbore  
34 from the surface. The top of the casing has an expandable

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 casing hanger installed. Figure 7 shows the expandable  
2 casing hanger. Next, the bottom hole assembly is run through  
3 the casing and secured into the bottom joint of the  
4 unexpanded suspended casing. The casing hanger setting tool  
5 134 is secured into the casing hanger 130 together with the  
6 first and second anchor and weight on bit mechanisms 140 and  
7 142, the downhole electric motor 114, and the remaining  
8 portions of the subterranean electric drilling machine 94.  
9 The entire subterranean electric drilling machine and  
10 expandable casing is then tripped to the bottom of the well.  
11 Drilling the next section of the well continues until  
12 sufficient hole for the expandable casing has been drilled.  
13 With the expandable casing in place, the casing hanger  
14 setting tool expands and locks the unexpanded length of  
15 expandable casing in the hole. The subterranean electric  
16 drilling machine 94 then releases from the casing and is  
17 recovered from the well.

18  
19 In one preferred embodiment, the casing hanger setting  
20 tool 134 is a packer-like assembly located beneath the  
21 downhole electric motor 114. The casing hanger setting tool  
22 initially expands with sufficient pressure to secure the  
23 casing to the non-rotating housing that is connected to the  
24 swivel and seal unit 124 that centralizes the casing. Once  
25 the new hole has been drilled, and the casing hanger 130 is  
26 in proper setting position, much higher pressure is pumped  
27 into the casing hanger setting tool to plastically expand the  
28 hanger and cold forge the hanger into the previously  
29 installed borehole casing 96. As an example of this process,  
30 various manufacturers connect pipeline repair tools to  
31 pipeline ends and connect wellheads to the top of casing  
32 strings with this type of "cold forge" process. The cement  
33 flowby ports of the casing hanger are left open for  
34 circulation of cement behind the casing. When the expandable

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 casing is later expanded, these holes are sealed through  
2 contact with overlap in the previous casing string. The  
3 casing hanger seal and cement help ensure a leak tight seal.  
4

5 In one preferred embodiment of the invention, the  
6 subterranean electric drilling machine is used to accomplish  
7 the many purposes including the following: (a) drill the new  
8 borehole 104; (b) convey into the well the expandable casing  
9 126; and (c) then using the casing hanger setting tool 134,  
10 the casing hanger is expanded into the previously installed  
11 borehole casing 96. Thereafter, the subterranean electric  
12 drilling machine releases from the casing hanger, thereby  
13 leaving the casing hanger and the expandable casing 126 in  
14 its unexpanded state in the well, and the subterranean  
15 electric drilling machine is then removed from the well.  
16

17 Thereafter, another tool called a subterranean liner  
18 expansion tool is conveyed into the wellbore. In one  
19 preferred embodiment, the subterranean liner expansion tool  
20 is labeled with element 284 in **Figure 10**. Figure 10 shows  
21 the previously installed borehole casing 96, the existing  
22 downhole cement 98, the new borehole 104, a portion the  
23 casing hanger 130 after the above expansion steps have been  
24 performed in (c) above, one end 222 of the casing hanger  
25 shown in Figure 7, and the other end 223 of the casing hanger  
26 shown in that figure. Cement flowby port 224 is also shown.  
27

28 The subterranean liner expansion tool 284 is used in a  
29 two step process. First, the cement is injected behind the  
30 unexpanded expandable casing. That process is shown in  
31 Figure 10. Second, the expandable casing is expanded. That  
32 process is shown in Figure 11. Thereafter, the subterranean  
33 liner expansion tool is removed from the well, and the well  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 is either completed, or the well is further extended using  
2 the methods and apparatus described above.

3  
4 In Figure 10, the subterranean liner expansion  
5 tool 284 is positioned within unexpanded casing 286.  
6 Counter-rotating roller casing expander tool is generally  
7 shown as numeral 288 in Figure 10. In one preferred  
8 embodiment, clockwise rotating roller assembly 290 is on the  
9 uphole side of the counter-rotating roller casing expander  
10 tool. It has individual rollers 292, 294, 296, and 298. In  
11 this embodiment, counter-clockwise rotating roller assembly  
12 300 is on the downhole side counter-rotating roller casing  
13 expander tool. It has individual rollers 302, 304, 306 and  
14 308. Electrically powered hydraulic systems within the  
15 counter-rotating roller casing expander tool are capable of  
16 loading the individual rollers against the interior of the  
17 expandable casing. In one preferred embodiment, several of  
18 the rollers, such as roller 304, are canted through the  
19 angle  $\theta$ . In one preferred embodiment, the rollers are  
20 hydraulically loaded and are canted to advance through the  
21 expandable casing as the rotating roller assemblies 290 and  
22 300 rotate in their respective directions. Electrically  
23 powered systems within the counter-rotating roller casing  
24 expander tool are then capable of rotating the appropriate  
25 elements of each rotating roller assembly. In Figure 10, the  
26 rollers are in their fully retracted position. The electric  
27 motor and related hydraulics for the counter-rotating roller  
28 casing expander tool are located within housing 310. That  
29 electric motor is labeled with legend 312, and the related  
30 hydraulics is labeled with legend 314, although those are not  
31 shown in Figure 10 for simplicity.

32  
33 The torque resistance section 316 is a component of the  
34 counter-rotating roller casing expander. It has longitudinal

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1        rollers 318 and 320. An electric motor 322 and associated  
2        hydraulics 324 are located within torque resistance section  
3        316 to properly actuate the longitudinal rollers 318 and 320.  
4        However, elements 322 and 324 are not shown in Figure 10 for  
5        the purposes of simplicity. The purpose of the torques  
6        resistance section 316 is to prevent any unbalanced torque  
7        resulting from the operation of the subterranean liner  
8        expansion tool that might cause the remainder of the downhole  
9        tool attached to the umbilical 116 to twist, thereby possibly  
10       breaking the umbilical. Breaking the umbilical downhole  
11       would be a catastrophic failure, although the tool can be  
12       retrieved using techniques to be described below.

13  
14       Various electrical wires and connectors along the length  
15       of the subterranean liner expansion tool conduct electrical  
16       power from the umbilical 116 to the counter-rotating roller  
17       casing expander tool 288 (which are designated figuratively  
18       by element 326 which are not shown in Figure 6 for the  
19       purposes of brevity). Sensors within the counter-rotating  
20       roller casing expander tool provide measurements such as the  
21       force delivered by the rollers to the casing, the position of  
22       the rollers, etc., which measurements are suitably is  
23       digitized and sent thorough suitable electrical circuitry and  
24       connectors along the length of subterranean liner expansion  
25       tool (designated figuratively by element 328 which is not  
26       shown in Figure 10 for brevity), which digital information is  
27       then sent uphole through the fiber optical cable 14 within  
28       the umbilical 116 in the form of suitable light pulses.  
29       Commands from the surface are also send downhole through the  
30       same bidirectional communications path. For example,  
31       commands to change the contact of the rollers, or expand the  
32       rollers outward to expand the casing may be sent downhole  
33       through this bidirectional communications path.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1       Figure 10 further shows progressing cavity pump 180 that  
2       is driven by a downhole pump motor assembly 182 and shroud  
3       180, which were previously described in Figure 6. Inflatable  
4       cement seal 330 is inflated during cementing operations.  
5

6       In the preferred embodiment shown in Figure 10, cement  
7       from the surface proceeds through umbilical 116; through  
8       umbilical mud valve 204 (which is used for both mud and  
9       cementing purposes); to the cross-over system 216 and into  
10      region 332; through the cement flowby port 224; through  
11      region 334 between the previously installed borehole casing  
12      96 and the exterior of the unexpanded casing 286; then into  
13      region 336 between the exterior of the unexpanded casing and  
14      the ID of the new borehole that labeled with element 338.  
15      The mud valve 204 has a total of three positions:  
16      (a) open, namely it allows cement to flow through as shown in  
17      Figure 10; (b) stop (not allow any cement to flow straight  
18      through); and (c) vent to the annulus between the umbilical  
19      116 and the ID of the previously installed casing so that  
20      cement can be cleaned from within the umbilical (which state  
21      is not shown in Figure 10 for simplicity). The region  
22      between the umbilical 116 and the ID of the previously  
23      installed casing is shown a element 212 in Figure 6, although  
24      that particular element is not shown in Figure 10 for  
25      simplicity (because of the large number of labeled elements  
26      in that vicinity of Figure 10).  
27

28      In Figure 10, the position of the "front" of the cement  
29      flow is shown by element 340. Sufficient cement is  
30      introduced into region 336 so that when the unexpanded casing  
31      286 is expanded in the next step (as explained below), then  
32      the well is properly cemented in place. Various sensors  
33      within the subterranean liner expansion tool provide data  
34      that allows the computer system 26 on the offshore platform

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 in this embodiment to determine the proper amount of cement  
2 to be sent downhole that at least partially fills region 342  
3 that is located between the exterior of the unexpanded casing  
4 286 and OD of the new borehole 338 which is not filled with  
5 cement in Figure 10. The overlapping region between the old  
6 cement and the new cement that has not set up in Figure 10 is  
7 shown as element 344. The new cement is now allowed to set  
8 up as shown in Figure 10. However, there is old cement that  
9 is hardened in Figure 10 such as the old cement behind the  
10 casing hanger 130 that is identified with numeral 345.

11  
12 The subterranean liner expansion tool 284 is comprised  
13 of a number of components including the counter-rotating  
14 roller casing expander tool 284 and the Smart Shuttle®.  
15 The subterranean liner expansion tool is transported downhole  
16 by the Smart Shuttle® which is comprised of components  
17 including the Smart Shuttle® seal 210, the progressing cavity  
18 pump 180, the downhole pump motor assembly 182, and the  
19 shroud 180 which have been previously described in relation  
20 to Figure 6. The Smart Shuttle also returns the subterranean  
21 liner expansion tool to the offshore platform in this  
22 preferred embodiment.

23  
24 In a preferred embodiment of the invention shown in  
25 Figure 10, the unexpanded casing 286 is 3,000 feet long, has  
26 a weight of approximately 40 lbs/foot, and has an unexpanded  
27 OD of approximately 8.0 inches OD. In a preferred embodiment  
28 shown in Figure 10, the previously installed borehole  
29 casing 96 is a 9 5/8 inch OD casing having a weight of  
30 approximately 40 lbs/foot.

31  
32 **Figure 11** shows the subterranean liner expansion tool  
33 284. Portions of the subterranean liner expansion tool are  
34 shown in Figure 11 including the counter-rotating roller

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 casing expander tool 288, the torque resistance section 316,  
2 and the progressing cavity pump 180 that is attached to the  
3 downhole pump motor assembly 182.

4  
5 After cementing was completed in Figure 10, the  
6 subterranean liner expansion tool is pulled up vertically  
7 above the casing hanger 130. Then the rollers of the  
8 the clockwise rotating roller assembly 290 the counter-  
9 clockwise rotating roller assembly 300 are placed in their  
10 extended positions. Then counter-rotating roller casing  
11 expander tool 288 is suitably energized, and it begins to  
12 expand the expandable casing on its downward travel (to the  
13 right-hand side of Figure 11) within the well. Figure 11  
14 shows the subterranean liner expansion tool in a location in  
15 the formation that is beyond the end of the previously  
16 installed casing 100 that is defined in Figure 10.

17  
18 In Figure 11, the expandable casing in its fully  
19 expandable form is shown at location 348. In Figure 11, the  
20 expandable casing in its unexpanded form is shown at location  
21 350. Cement surrounding the expandable casing in its fully  
22 expandable form is shown as element 352 in Figure 11. Cement  
23 surrounding the expandable casing in its unexpanded form is  
24 shown as element 354 in Figure 11. The counter-rotating  
25 roller casing expander tool 288 remains suitable energized,  
26 and it eventually completes the expansion of the expandable  
27 casing at some extreme distance in the well designed by  
28 element 356 in Figure 11. Thereafter, the liner expansion  
29 tool 284 is removed from the wellbore. Thereafter, the  
30 cement is allowed to cure. After the cement is cured, the  
31 well is completed to produce oil and gas using techniques and  
32 procedures typically used in the oil and gas industry or  
33 using those methods and apparatus described in the "SDCI IP",  
34 entire copies of which are incorporated herein by reference.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In Figure 11, the expandable casing in its fully  
2           expandable form as shown at location 348 can also be called  
3           equivalently a "liner" because of its attachment to the  
4           previously installed casing 96 in Figure 10. Hence, the name  
5           "subterranean liner expansion tool".  
6

7           **Figure 12** shows the casing hanger 130, a cement flowby  
8           port 224, the previously installed borehole casing 96,  
9           and expandable casing 126 in its unexpanded form that is  
10          attached to the casing hanger at casing hanger end 222.  
11          These elements have been previously defined in Figure 6 and  
12          in Figure 7. Figure 12 shows the casing hanger after a  
13          portion of it has been expanded with the casing hanger  
14          setting tool. The state of the casing hanger 130 in Figure  
15          12 is similar to that shown in Figure 10. The inside  
16          diameter of the previously installed borehole casing 96 is  
17          shown in Figure 12 by the legend ID2. The wall thickness of  
18          the previously installed borehole casing is identified by the  
19          legend WT2. The inside diameter of the expandable casing 126  
20          in its unexpanded form is identified by the legend ID3. The  
21          wall thickness of the previously installed borehole casing is  
22          identified by the legend WT3. This is the configuration  
23          before the passage of the subterranean liner expansion tool.  
24

25          **Figure 13** provides a section view of the configuration  
26          of components shown in Figure 12 after the passage by the  
27          subterranean liner expansion tool. Various elements on  
28          Figure 13 have been previously described. In addition,  
29          element 358 shows the expandable casing in its expanded state  
30          after the passage of the subterranean liner expansion tool.  
31          Various inside diameters are defined by legends ID2, ID4, and  
32          ID5. In general, ID2 will equal ID4 that will equal ID5. If  
33          this is the case, this is a true monobore well. However,  
34          there are limitations to the power of the subterranean liner

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 expansion tool. So, if old hard cement is set up behind the  
2 overlapping portions of the previously installed casing in  
3 the location identified by element 360, the subterranean  
4 liner expansion tool may not have sufficient power to crush  
5 old hard cement and rock behind that particular location.  
6 Such a location is identified by element 345 in  
7 Figure 10. In such event, ID4 would be less than ID2 by as  
8 much as 2 times the dimension of WT2 in Figure 12. This  
9 extra thickness may persist for the length of the casing  
10 hanger L1 as shown in Figure 7. Therefore, the installation  
11 described in Figure 13 will provide either a monobore well,  
12 or a near-monobore well.

13  
14 In the following, there are different topics of interest  
15 related to the above described preferred embodiment.  
16 Subsection titles will be used for the purposes of clarity.

17  
18 **Figure 14** shows relevant parameters related to fluid  
19 flow rates through the umbilical. Umbilical fluid flow rates  
20 are sufficient to support drilling as shown in Figure 9. One  
21 preferred embodiment uses a 4.5 inch ID pipe providing 173  
22 gallons per minute (GPM) at a pressure of 1000 pounds per  
23 square inch (PSI) pressure loss over a 20 mile offset. Here,  
24 the "Pressure Loss" is 1000 PSI. Here, the "Flow Rate" is  
25 173 gallons per minute. This was calculated using a Bingham  
26 Plastic mudflow model with 12 lb/gallon mud at a velocity of  
27 3.5 feet per second (fps). This is a "Flow Velocity" of 3.5  
28 feet per second. The umbilical geometry of 4.5 inches ID and  
29 6.0 inches OD may be optimized under different situations as  
30 required. However, these particular dimensions are selected  
31 for a reverse flow mud system inside a 8.5 inch ID cased hole  
32 having a 20-mile offset. The Bingham Plastic mudflow model  
33 is described in detail in Section 8.2 entitled "Mathematical  
34 and Physical Models" of the book entitled "Petroleum Well

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Construction" by Michael J. Economides, Larry T. Watters, and  
2 Shari Dunn-Norman, John Wiley & Sons, New York, New York,  
3 1998, an entire copy of which is incorporated herein by  
4 reference. An entire copy of the book referenced in the  
5 previous sentence is also incorporated herein by reference.  
6 In particular, please refer to Table 8-2 on page 222 of the  
7 book for detailed algebraic equations related to the Bingham  
8 Plastic Model.

### 9 10 Tripping into the Well

11  
12 There are various constraints on how rapidly the  
13 subterranean electric drilling machine can enter the  
14 wellbore. Since the vertically suspended casing string and  
15 the subterranean electric drilling machine weight may be  
16 greater than can be safely run with the umbilical, the  
17 first anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 140 and  
18 second anchor and weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 142  
19 as shown in Figure 6 provide an anchor mechanism that acts as  
20 a "downhole hoist" to "walk" the casing vertically downhole  
21 and eventually into any horizontal section of the well. This  
22 "downhole hoist" is also called herein an "anchor mechanism"  
23 when used for this particular purpose. The subterranean  
24 electric drilling machine and its related anchor mechanism  
25 can be fielded from within a lubricator as is standard  
26 practice in the industry to maintain well pressure control.  
27 Once the downhole weight is within the capacity of the  
28 umbilical, use of the anchor mechanism is stopped and the  
29 casing load is transferred to the umbilical. The anchor  
30 means 144 and 146 and anchor means 148 and 150 as shown in  
31 Figure 6 of the anchor mechanism are then collapsed for rapid  
32 transit to the bottom of the well. Further downhole travel  
33 of the casing and the subterranean electric drilling machine  
34 is accomplished by pumping mud into the annulus space between

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 the well's installed casing and the umbilical. Pressure  
2 acting upon this annular piston area generates sufficient  
3 force to rapidly move the equipment downhole at about 2 fps  
4 in the 15 to 20 mile offset range. A 225,000 lb load with a  
5 0.2 coefficient of friction requires approximately 1,600 psi  
6 differential pressure across Smart Shuttle seals (see element  
7 210 in Figure 6). This pressure capability is obtained with  
8 multiple seals load-sharing the pressure. Motion cannot be  
9 accomplished without moving mud from below the drilling  
10 machine out of the well up through the umbilical ID. The  
11 pressure in the casing below the drilling machine (a sealed  
12 volume due to cementing) is approximately 3500 psi above  
13 static. The downhole mud pump may be used to assist in  
14 moving this required mudflow through the umbilical ID. For  
15 trip velocities in the range of 2 feet per second the surface  
16 mud pumps will need to provide 350 gallons per minute at 4600  
17 pounds per square inch. At shorter distances with less  
18 pressure losses, the equipment may move faster (if surface  
19 mud pump volume capacity is available).

20  
21 **Figure 15** shows various parameters related to tripping  
22 the subterranean electric drilling machine and the expandable  
23 casing into the well. A 20 mile well is on the order of  
24 100,000 feet. At this distance, and at 2 feet per second,  
25 the formation back pressure is 1000 PSI.

#### 26 27 Tripping Out of the Well

28  
29 The subterranean electric drilling machine 94 is tripped  
30 from the well with cuttings filled mud within the umbilical.  
31 Sufficient mudflow is pumped down the annulus between the  
32 umbilical and the uphole casing to fill the entire cased  
33 wellbore below the drilling machine. The maximum pressure  
34 the pump will provide this annulus is 5000 psi and at a

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 20 mile offset, the volume is limited to approximately 440  
2 gallons per minute or a drilling machine trip speed of  
3 approximately 2.4 fps. Simultaneously, the surface linear  
4 umbilical traction unit pulls at approximately 12,500 lbs  
5 (to overcome the fluid flow drag upon the umbilical, the  
6 frictional umbilical drag and the frictional drag of the  
7 subterranean electric drilling machine and its seals).  
8

9 As the subterranean electric drilling machine moves up  
10 the wellbore and the annular fluid pressure losses become  
11 less, the maximum mud pump pressure no longer limits the trip  
12 speed. The limiting factor then becomes the mud volumes,  
13 which the mud pumps may provide. For these tripping  
14 purposes, a third surface mud pump may be used in another  
15 preferred embodiment. It will support higher speed trips and  
16 provide redundancies during other operations.  
17

18 Since all of the mud volumes pass through the downhole  
19 mud pump, an accurate metering of the mud volume and  
20 pressures is obtained throughout the trip. This keeps  
21 pressure off the open formation during trips out of the  
22 wellbore.  
23

#### 24 Surface Mud System

25

26 A large volume of working mud is needed to manage the  
27 umbilical volume while tripping in the hole. For 20-mile  
28 offset operations, an active mud tank volume of 3500 barrels  
29 may be required. This is similar in capacity to those used  
30 in some large offshore drilling rigs.  
31

32 In one preferred embodiment, the installed casing is  
33 8.5 inches ID, and the umbilical is a 6 inch OD umbilical  
34 with a 4.5 inch ID. During drilling operations, the maximum

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 mud flow rate is 150 gallons per minute with a pressure drop  
2 of 825 pounds per square inch, which includes frictional  
3 losses only. During tripping out of the hole at 2.4 feet per  
4 second, the maximum mud flow rate is 422 gallons per minute  
5 with a pressure drop of 4,750 pounds per square inch. During  
6 running in the hole with casing at 2 feet per second, the  
7 maximum mud flow rate is 350 gallons per minute, with a  
8 pressure drop of 3600 pounds per square inch (with cement  
9 sealed on the bottom of the well).

10  
11 Thus, for the tripping out of the well, a minimum of  
12 two 750 hp surface mud pumps would be required. One pump is  
13 adequate for routine drilling operations. When the  
14 subterranean electric drilling machine is at a distance of  
15 20 miles, approximately 14 hours are required to run into the  
16 hole, 12 hours are required to come out of the hole, and 11  
17 hours are required for cuttings to circulate from the bottom  
18 of the hole to the surface. Therefore, accurate monitoring  
19 and management of mudflow and quality into and out of the  
20 well and umbilical both at the surface and downhole at the  
21 drilling machine is important for reliable well control.

## 22 23 The Drilling Operation

24  
25 When the subterranean drilling rig reaches the bottom of  
26 the hole, the high-speed bit may encounter cement within the  
27 bore of the cased hole. The anchor means 144, 146, 148 and  
28 150 as shown in Figure 6 are engaged, mud circulation started  
29 and the bit is rotated. Notice that downhole sensors monitor  
30 mudflow composition parameters to minimize circulation time  
31 for conditioning the hole. Weight on bit is applied and  
32 drilling moves forward out of the previously cased hole.  
33 Traditional steering mechanisms and MWD tools are used to  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 guide forward progress of the bit through the formation.  
2 Directly behind this BHA is the unexpanded casing.

3  
4 The mudflow rates and the cutting solids this flow rate  
5 can transport out of the hole will limit drilling progress.  
6 For example, a drilled 12 1/2 inch ID hole and a 4 1/2 inch  
7 ID umbilical having an internal mud velocity of 3 feet per  
8 second carrying 6.5% solids will have a maximum penetration  
9 rate of 90 ft/hr.

10  
11 Significant information will be monitored and  
12 communicated real time to the surface for control of the  
13 operations. Some of the information includes:

- 14 (a) Weight on bit
- 15 (b) Penetration rate
- 16 (c) Bit RPM
- 17 (d) Bit power (determined from power consumed by the downhole
- 18 electric motor 114 of the subterranean drilling machine)
- 19 (e) Mud flow rate through bit (by monitoring throughput of
- 20 the progressing cavity pump 180)
- 21 (f) Differential mud pressures across bit and to surface
- 22 across umbilical
- 23 (g) Mud quality sensors for entrained gas, cuttings loading,
- 24 etc.
- 25 (h) Mud temperatures
- 26 (i) Basic operating parameters of the various subterranean
- 27 electric drilling machine functions that include voltage,
- 28 power, RPM, pressure, temperature, axial load in umbilical at
- 29 the pump, etc. are all monitored in real time to verify
- 30 equipment status.

31  
32 This monitoring will provide for efficient control of  
33 the downhole drilling operation. If additional information  
34 is required, in one preferred embodiment additional

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 instrumentation or tools may be included in the umbilical at  
2 the various connection points (approximately every 5 miles).  
3 In one preferred embodiment, it is preferable to have  
4 remotely operated downhole BOP's. These devices are  
5 packer-like assemblies, which when inflated, anchor to the  
6 inside of the casing. An internal valve provides a well  
7 fluid isolation point.

8  
9 This extensive monitoring capability allows drilling  
10 operations to use under-balanced fluids, if beneficial to the  
11 well program. This equipment capability also allows for  
12 direct well control and production testing through the  
13 drilling machine.

14  
15 When the well has drilled forward to the casing point,  
16 pressuring the setting tool included in the subterranean  
17 electric drilling machine sets the expandable casing hanger.  
18 The success of the hanger setting operation may be load  
19 tested with the downhole hoist (which when used in this  
20 application is also called a "weight on bit mechanism").  
21 Upon verification of a successful operation, the subterranean  
22 electric drilling machine releases from the casing and starts  
23 its trip from the well. This will leave the well ready for  
24 casing cementing and casing expansion.

25  
26 During all operations in a wellbore, the umbilical is  
27 maintained under tension between the downhole tools and the  
28 surface equipment. This permits rapid transit in the  
29 wellbore by preventing buckling. A constraint is that a  
30 minimum number of gentle bends should be included in the  
31 wellbore design. This constraint is similar to familiar  
32 drill pipe and coiled tubing operational constraints in  
33 current well operations. Selected means to provide such  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 tension are shown in Figure 5. The tension is monitored with  
2 computer system 26 in Figure 5.

3  
4 Several contingency operations are reviewed to  
5 illustrate the capabilities of the subterranean electric  
6 drilling system.

7  
8 The subterranean electric drilling machine can control  
9 the well and can control a well "kick", or well kicks.  
10 In one preferred embodiment, the well uses a reverse  
11 circulation system. The first mud cuttings and bypass port  
12 (MCBP) 164 and the second mud cutting and bypass port 166 in  
13 of the subterranean electric drilling machine act as a packer  
14 within the well directing all returns to the umbilical. The  
15 umbilical has sufficient pressure rating to contain any kick  
16 and allow it to be circulated from the well. Instrumentation  
17 monitoring mud conditions downhole should provide early  
18 indication of developing well control problems.

19  
20 The subterranean electric drilling machine can survive n  
21 open hole collapse. The well is drilled with unexpanded  
22 casing over the drilling work string (that is element 125 in  
23 Figure 6). Should the formation collapse on the casing, the  
24 subterranean electric drilling machine is withdrawn through  
25 the unexpanded casing. The casing may subsequently be  
26 expanded and drilling operations resumed.

27  
28 The subterranean electric drilling machine can survive a  
29 downhole blackout of power. Assume the failure is in the  
30 power transmission or control system during a tripping  
31 operation. The umbilical and surface traction winch  
32 have sufficient power to pull the dead equipment from the  
33 wellbore. Surface pumps would continue to provide mud for  
34 displacement replacement. With care, mud pressure below the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 subterranean electric drilling machine may be used to reduce  
2 the load required to pull the machine from the well.

3  
4 If the failure occurs when the drilling machine is  
5 anchored and making hole, then a release between the downhole  
6 mud pump and the anchor means of the drilling machine is  
7 actuated. That disconnect occurs between the female side of  
8 universal mud and electrical connector 176 and the male side  
9 of universal mud and electrical connector 178 as shown in  
10 Figure 6. In one preferred embodiment, the release may be  
11 triggered with an "over-pull" or operation may be via pumping  
12 a dart or ball down the umbilical. Once the release is  
13 actuated, the drilling machine controls, and mud pump  
14 assembly may be pulled "dead" from the well. Once the fault  
15 is isolated and repaired, the recovered equipment is run back  
16 into the well where it connects with the drilling equipment  
17 left in the hole. The Smart Shuttle portion of the  
18 subterranean electric drilling makes this reconnection.  
19 Regaining control of the equipment allows either drilling  
20 operations to proceed or for the equipment to be recovered  
21 from the well.

## 22 23 The Well Construction Process

24  
25 Drilling and casing operations in the preferred  
26 embodiment is a two-trip process. The drilling equipment  
27 defined above (the subterranean electric drilling machine)  
28 is used to drill the hole, position and anchor the casing  
29 (but not expand it) within the hole. The casing is left in  
30 position ready for cementing operations (if required) and  
31 casing expansion to its final installed dimension is  
32 accomplished with the use of a second tool system (the  
33 subterranean liner expansion tool).

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In this preferred embodiment, the new expandable casing  
2   is 3,000 feet long, 54 lbs/ft, and has an unexpanded OD of  
3   8.0 inches OD. The downhole casing hanger and the casing  
4   string are then suspended from the surface rig floor. The  
5   bottom hole assembly (BHA) is then made up and run into the  
6   casing string. In one preferred embodiment, the centralizing  
7   casing hanger setting tool is used to lock the casing and  
8   drilling equipment together. Next the rotary motor and the  
9   anchor mechanism are added to the assembly together with the  
10  downhole mud pump that may be used as a Smart Shuttle.

11  
12           This described equipment is all long and heavy. It is  
13  handled as major assemblies with quick connection devices  
14  between each assembly. The estimated size and weight of  
15  various components appear below in the following.

16  
17           The bit is about 2 feet long, and weighs 500 lbs in air.  
18  The MWD tools are 40 feet long and weigh about 1,200 lbs in  
19  air. The rotary steering tool is about 30 feet long, and  
20  weighs 1,500 lbs in air. The rotary shaft (element 125 in  
21  Figure 6) also called the "drilling work string" or simply  
22  "drill pipe", is about 3,000 feet long and weighs 28,500 lbs  
23  in air. The expandable casing has a weight of 54 lbs/ft, is  
24  about 3,000 feet long, and weighs 162,000 lbs in air. The  
25  rotary section and anchor section of the subterranean  
26  electric drilling machine (that includes elements 114, 140  
27  and 142 in Figure 6) is about 120 feet long and weights  
28  2,800 lbs. The downhole mud pump section of the subterranean  
29  electric drilling machine (including elements 180, 196, and  
30  214 in Figure 6) is about 122 feet long and weighs about  
31  3,900 lbs in air. Any separate control module associated  
32  with the subterranean electric drilling machine is about 20  
33  feet long and has a weight of 4,000 lbs. So, the total  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 length of the assembly is about 3,334 feet long that weighs  
2 about 200,800 lbs in air.

### 4 Cementing and Expanding the Casing

6 In this preferred embodiment of the invention,  
7 subterranean liner expansion tool 284 in Figure 10  
8 installs the cement and expands the monobore casing in the  
9 well. This approach was selected to simplify the  
10 subterranean electric drilling machine and to provide  
11 operational flexibility when performing these monobore well  
12 construction operations.

14 The subterranean liner expansion tool has two basic  
15 functions. The first is to cement the casing in the well  
16 (if required). In one embodiment, this is accomplished  
17 through a 2 inch cementing line in a 3 1/2 inch  
18 OD umbilical. Unlike the subterranean electric drilling  
19 machine when attached to casing, the Smart Shuttle at speeds  
20 up to 10 feet per second pulls this umbilical into the well.  
21 The Smart Shuttle operation of the liner expansion tool  
22 requires that the inflatable cement seal 330 is collapsed,  
23 and then fluids are pumped from the downhole side of the  
24 Smart Shuttle® seal 210 to the uphole side of that seal as  
25 has been previously described. To cement the well,  
26 inflatable cement seal 330 is inflated. This cement seal is  
27 also called a straddle seal (with one side being inflatable)  
28 on the tool's outside diameter that ensures the fluid  
29 connection between the umbilical and the cement ports in the  
30 casing hanger. Once the tool is in place, cement is  
31 circulated into the annulus space behind the unexpanded  
32 casing. Adequate instrumentation monitors cement placement,  
33 volume and Smart Shuttle location and reports all of these  
34 monitored parameters to the surface.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           The second function of the subterranean liner expansion  
2 tool is to expand the casing to its final operating size.  
3 The roller mechanisms for this task have already been  
4 described in relation to Figure 10. Rollers provide power,  
5 control and reversibility. If the casing were expanded with  
6 internal pressure, it would lack any expansion control - for  
7 example, if the hole diameter were irregular, then the casing  
8 expansion would be irregular as well. Expansion dies have  
9 the problem of being a one shot, one size expansion process.  
10 Internal casing rollers have experience in buckled casing  
11 repair tools and in anchoring casing inside Unibore  
12 wellheads. Weatherford has developed a one step expansion  
13 tool for expanding casing that is featured on their website.  
14 Weatherford International, Inc. may be reached at 515 Post  
15 Oak Blvd, Suite 600, Houston, Texas 77027, having the  
16 telephone number of (713) 693-4000, that has the website  
17 of [www.weatherford.com](http://www.weatherford.com). In Figure 10, the counter-rotating  
18 roller casing expander tool 288 has contra-rotating rollers  
19 to minimize the tool's torque that has to be externally  
20 reacted while expanding the casing. The longitudinal rollers  
21 318 and 320 in Figure 10 provide for this torque reaction.  
22 As previously described, a downhole motor powered with a  
23 separate electrical circuit from the surface provides the  
24 necessary rotary power.

25  
26           In a preferred embodiment, the surface equipment is  
27 similar in arrangement to the drilling machine system.  
28 However, this equipment may be smaller as the umbilical  
29 OD may be chosen to be 3 1/2 inches OD.

30  
31           As described earlier, in one mode of operation of the  
32 subterranean electric drilling machine, it acts like a Smart  
33 Shuttle. The Smart Shuttle will be used to pump the  
34 umbilical and the subterranean liner expansion tool to the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 downhole worksite. The Smart Shuttle works by pumping fluid  
2 from one side of the seals to the other with an electric  
3 powered progressive cavity pump (PCP) (or any positive  
4 displacement pump). At relative low differential pressures,  
5 large axial forces ( approximately 4,000 lbs net) are  
6 generated that are sufficient to pull the tool and umbilical  
7 into the hole. Top-hole speeds are the maximum design speed  
8 of 10 fps. At extreme offsets, the speed will be slower (2.5  
9 feet per second) due to fluid drag force on the umbilical,  
10 which will be proportional to the transit speed.

11  
12 The Smart Shuttle system is equipped with sensors to  
13 detect location and to easily position the tools straddle  
14 seals across the casing hanger of the last casing string.  
15 Once in position, the inflatable seal is inflated and  
16 circulation through the hole-casing annulus is confirmed.  
17 This may be accomplished by pumping from the surface or by  
18 using the Smart Shuttle pump to circulate the area. Cement  
19 will be spotted into the annulus and the casing will be  
20 expanded prior to the cement hardening.

21  
22 Figure 10 illustrates the subterranean liner expansion  
23 tool with cement being injected from the surface through the  
24 umbilical. Approximately 69 gallons per minute will flow at  
25 100,000 ft with a pressure loss of about 9,000 pounds per  
26 square inch. Thus, the cementing pump will have to deliver  
27 at 10,000 pounds per square inch at these rates. It will  
28 require 240 minutes for the cement to be delivered at 100,000  
29 ft from the surface and then another 77 minutes to spot  
30 approximately 126 barrels of cement into the hole-casing  
31 annulus space. When operating at these large offsets,  
32 managing the setting time of the cement and the required  
33 volume of cement is important.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Tracers may be added to the fluid pads before and  
2 following the cement as it is pumped into the umbilical.  
3 Sensors located on the subterranean electric drilling machine  
4 will verify when the cement is passing these downhole sensor  
5 locations. This will help accurately spot cement into the  
6 well. Once the cement is out of the umbilical, a bypass  
7 valve is opened and mud is circulated through the annulus to  
8 clear the umbilical.

9  
10 Some casing may not require to be cemented into the  
11 hole. It may be possible that the casing can be expanded  
12 into the wall of the hole with sufficient pressure that the  
13 residual contact stress between the rock and expanded casing  
14 are sufficient to form an axial fluid seal. This avoids the  
15 cementing step and simplifies operations. However, it places  
16 a significant load upon the casing expansion rollers.

17  
18 Once the cement is in position within the hole-casing  
19 annulus, the inflatable cement seal 330 is deflated and the  
20 Smart Shuttle pulls the expansion tool back into the  
21 previously cased wellbore. The counter-rotating roller  
22 casing expander tool is energized, and its roller engage the  
23 casing ID by expanding until contact with the casing is  
24 established. Rotation of the rollers is begun and the tool  
25 slowly moves forward. Forward motion is provided by the  
26 slight canted angle of the rollers, which screw the expander  
27 into the casing hanger and pipe. This canted angle is shown  
28 as the angle  $\theta$  in Figure 10. In one preferred embodiment,  
29 the counter-rotating roller casing expander tool has  
30 sufficient strength to expand the casing hanger and the  
31 previously set casing back into the formation to provide a  
32 smooth casing ID. This process is illustrated in Figures 12  
33 and 13. Figure 12 shows the casing hanger area prior to  
34 tool's passage and Figure 13 illustrates this same region

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 after the tool has passed. The subterranean liner expansion  
2 tool has to have sufficient strength to expand the two casing  
3 strings back into the formation rocks.  
4

5 The subterranean liner expansion tool continues  
6 expanding the casing to the bottom of the string. The  
7 process of expanding the casing will reposition the cement  
8 that is in the annuli. It will be extruded along the  
9 reducing annuli until the cement reaches the end of the  
10 casing where excess will flow into the uncased hole below the  
11 expansion machine. Once the casing has been fully expanded,  
12 the rollers of the subterranean liner expansion tool are  
13 collapsed to their small transport size and the Smart Shuttle  
14 and surface traction winch are used to bring the tool to the  
15 surface. This leaves the hole ready for the next drilling  
16 cycle.  
17

18 Drilling and monobore casing operations continue until  
19 the well reaches the target reservoir. It is then possible  
20 to drill lateral drainholes (using a similar process) or a  
21 single large bore completion may be made.  
22

23 There are various methods to handle contingencies with  
24 the subterranean liner expansion tool. Similar to the  
25 subterranean electric drilling machine, considerable  
26 flexibility exists in the cementing and expansion tool  
27 concepts to handle most contingencies. A few of these  
28 contingencies illustrate this capability.  
29

30 Suppose the power to the subterranean liner expansion  
31 tool is cut off during a tip into the well. A bypass valve  
32 around the Smart Shuttle pump will open and allow the tool to  
33 be pulled from the wellbore using the surface linear winch  
34 and the strength of the umbilical. Alternatively, in some

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 wells, it may be possible to pump mud down the cement line in  
2 the umbilical and apply pressure below the Smart Shuttle to  
3 assist in its retrieval.

4  
5 Suppose there is a loss of power with cement in the  
6 umbilical. Then, a downhole bypass valve will open  
7 connecting the umbilical bore with the cased well annulus.  
8 Mud pumps may then be used to flow the cement to the surface.

9  
10 Suppose the subterranean liner expansion tool fails  
11 without expanding the entire casing string. The tool is then  
12 recovered and the cement in the well annulus is assumed to  
13 harden. The next drilling operation will be to mill out of  
14 the wellbore and sidetrack to resume drilling to target.

15  
16 Suppose the expansion strength of the subterranean liner  
17 expansion tool is not sufficient to expand the casing hanger  
18 to a full bore ID. The subterranean liner expansion tool has  
19 the capability of operating at various diameters. It will  
20 expand the casing to gage diameter where ever possible. Some  
21 areas, (like the casing hanger area) may not achieve gage -  
22 especially if the formation is exceptionally hard/strong.  
23 The under gage diameter is not desirable, but not a  
24 significant problem as all of the tool systems should pass  
25 through this reduced diameter. Should it not be possible to  
26 achieve the minimum gage diameter, then a mill may be used to  
27 increase inside diameter as a last resort.

#### 28 29 Casing Flotation Techniques

30  
31 Casing flotation techniques may be used to dramatically  
32 reduce the well annuli pressure required to pump casing into  
33 the well or reduce the required downhole hoist capacity. Air  
34 or nitrogen may be enclosed within the casing at the surface

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 to reduce its apparent weight in mud during running  
2 operations. Once on bottom, the near buoyant casing would be  
3 flooded and filled with mud so that operations as previously  
4 described would continue. This and other related weight  
5 saving concepts have the potential to reduce the well annuli  
6 running pressure or downhole hoist capacity by 90% as  
7 compared to the loads identified above in the section  
8 entitled "The Well Construction Process". This capability  
9 allows much longer and/or heavier strings of casing to be  
10 optionally run.

11  
12 Casing flotation techniques will not have an impact upon  
13 the umbilical's design criteria. The umbilical's internal  
14 working pressure defines its required axial strength. A  
15 10,000 psi internal pressure for well control requires an  
16 umbilical axial load strength of approximately 160,000 lbs to  
17 resist the surface pressure effects.

#### 18 19 Alternative Embodiments of Drilling Systems

20  
21 In Figure 6, first anchor and weight on bit mechanism  
22 (AWOBM) 140 and second anchor and weight on bit mechanism  
23 (AWOBM) 142 are an example of "anchors" or "anchor means".  
24 In the following summary, the term "Anchor Means" may be  
25 capitalized.

26  
27 In Figure 6, the expandable casing 126 is being "pushed"  
28 deeper into the wellbore by the anchor means. Therefore,  
29 this configuration is called a "Drill & Push" configuration.  
30 In this situation, the anchor means are on the uphole side of  
31 the subterranean electric drilling machine. On the other-  
32 hand, if the anchor means were instead on the downhole side  
33 of the subterranean electric drilling machine, then this  
34 configuration would be called a "Drill & Drag" configuration.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In Figure 6, the anchor means are located on the inside  
2 of the previously installed borehole casing 96. In this  
3 configuration, the anchor means are located within the  
4 "Wellbore". On the other-hand, if the anchor means are  
5 instead located within the new borehole 104, then the anchor  
6 means are located in the "Open-Hole".  
7

8           In Figure 6, the downhole electric motor 114  
9 rotates the rotary shaft 125 that is also called the  
10 "drilling work string" or simply the "Drill Pipe".  
11 In Figure 6, the downhole electric motor rotates the Drill  
12 Pipe. Therefore, the "rotary means", in Figure 6 is  
13 described by the following: "Rotates Drill Pipe". In  
14 Figure 6, the expandable pipe 126 is not rotated. However,  
15 there are other configurations of the rotary means including:  
16 "Rotates Drill Pipe and Casing", and "In Open Hole Rotates  
17 Bit". In the below defined list of different preferred  
18 embodiments, the term "rotary means" is capitalized as  
19 "Rotary Means".  
20

21           In Figure 6, the expandable casing 126 is not rotated.  
22 Therefore, in this configuration, the expandable casing is  
23 "Non-Rotating". In other preferred embodiments, the  
24 expandable casing can be rotated by the rotary means. In  
25 this configuration, the expandable pipe is "Rotated".  
26

27           In Figure 6, the progressing cavity pump 180 is driven  
28 by a downhole pump motor assembly generally designated by  
29 element 182 that comprises the mud pump, or "Mud Pump" in  
30 Figure 6. In this preferred embodiment, the Mud Pump is  
31 located within the Wellbore.  
32

33           Accordingly, the preferred embodiment shown in Figure 6  
34 can be described as follows (Preferred Embodiment "A"):

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Arrangement: Drill & Push  
2 Anchor Means: In Wellbore  
3 Mud Pump: In Wellbore  
4 Rotary Means: Rotates Drill Pipe  
5 Expandable Casing: Non-Rotating  
6 Comments: Preferred Embodiment shown in Figure 6.  
7

8 Accordingly, another preferred embodiment of the  
9 invention may be succinctly described as follows

10 (Preferred Embodiment "B"):

11 Arrangement: Drill & Push  
12 Anchor Means: In Wellbore  
13 Mud Pump: In Wellbore  
14 Rotary Means: Rotates Drill Pipe and Expandable Casing  
15 Expandable Casing: Rotating  
16 Comments: This requires higher rotary torque than  
17 Preferred Embodiment "A".  
18

19 Accordingly, another preferred embodiment of the  
20 invention may be succinctly described as follows

21 (Preferred Embodiment "C"):

22 Arrangement: Drill & Drag  
23 Anchor Means: In Open Hole  
24 Mud Pump: In Wellbore  
25 Rotary Means: In Open Hole, Rotates Drill Bit  
26 Expandable Casing: Non-Rotating, Drags Behind Anchor Means  
27 Comments: This requires stable formations for  
28 Open Hole Anchor Means.  
29

30 Accordingly, another preferred embodiment of the  
31 invention may be succinctly described as follows (Preferred  
32 Embodiment "D"):

33 Arrangement: "Drainhole Drilling"  
34 Anchor Means: In Wellbore

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Mud Pump: In Wellbore  
2 Rotary Means: Rotates Drill Pipe  
3 Expandable Casing: Non-Rotating  
4 Comments: Similar to Preferred Embodiment "A", except  
5 smaller diameters of expandable casing used.  
6

7 In the above, Preferred Embodiment "C" is further  
8 described in the following document: U.S. Disclosure  
9 Document No. 494374 filed on May 26, 2001 that is entitled in  
10 part "Continuous Casting Boring Machine", an entire copy of  
11 which is incorporated herein by reference.  
12

13 In the above, Preferred Embodiment "D" is further  
14 described in the following document: U.S. Disclosure  
15 Document No. 495112 filed on June 11, 2001 that is entitled  
16 in part "Liner/Drainhole Drilling Machine", an entire copy of  
17 which is incorporated herein by reference.  
18

19 The subterranean electric drilling machine has been  
20 illustrated performing hydrocarbon drilling applications.  
21 However, there are other preferred embodiments of the  
22 invention. The subterranean electric drilling machine has  
23 the capability of performing directional drilling over large  
24 distances both onshore and offshore. This includes drilling  
25 pipelines under large and deep rivers, across large  
26 topographical features like cliffs or subsea escarpments.  
27 Other applications for the subterranean electric drilling  
28 machine include near surface drilling in urban areas for  
29 installation or replacement of utilities like water lines,  
30 gas mains, sewers, storm drains, underground power lines, and  
31 communication lines, including broadband cables and fiber  
32 optic cables. The selected drill bit would be sized for the  
33 application. These preferred embodiments are not further  
34 described herein in the interests of brevity.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           **Figure 16** is similar to Figure 9, except here the well  
2 is being drilled from an onshore wellsite. Subterranean  
3 electric drilling machine 94 is disposed within a previously  
4 installed borehole casing 362 that is surrounded by existing  
5 downhole cement 364. The subterranean electric drilling  
6 machine 94 was described in relation to Figure 6. The  
7 subterranean electric drilling machine is in the process of  
8 drilling a new borehole 366 into geological formation 368.  
9 Expandable casing 370 is carried into the new borehole by the  
10 subterranean electric drilling machine. Umbilical 372  
11 connects the subterranean electric drilling machine to a  
12 land-based drill center 374 that has the hoist, the computer  
13 systems, the umbilical carousel, etc. Surface casing 376 is  
14 surrounded by cement 378. The bottom of the surface casing  
15 is connected to previously installed casing 362 by casing  
16 string 380. The ocean 382 has ocean surface 384 and ocean  
17 bottom 386. Here, the new borehole is being drilled beneath  
18 the ocean from a land-based drill center. The land 388 joins  
19 the ocean at a beach 390.

20  
21           **Figure 17** is similar to Figure 9 and Figure 16, except  
22 here the well is being drilled from a land based drill site.  
23 Subterranean electric drilling machine 94 is disposed within  
24 a previously installed borehole casing 392 that is surrounded  
25 by existing downhole cement 394. The subterranean electric  
26 drilling machine 94 was described in relation to Figure 6.  
27 The subterranean electric drilling machine is in the process  
28 of drilling a new borehole 396 into geological formation 398.  
29 Expandable casing 400 is carried into the new borehole by the  
30 subterranean electric drilling machine. Umbilical 402  
31 connects the subterranean electric drilling machine to the  
32 land based drill site generally designated by element 404.  
33 Shown figuratively are hoist 406; the umbilical carousel,  
34 computers, etc. 408; and another section of umbilical 410.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 Element 411 figuratively shows a lubricator. Surface casing  
2 412 is surrounded by cement 414. The bottom of the surface  
3 casing is connected to previously installed casing 392 by  
4 casing string 416. The surface of the earth is identified by  
5 element 418.

6  
7 **Figure 18** shows a subterranean electric drilling machine  
8 420 that is drilling an open borehole in the earth.

9 Element 420 is called an open hole subterranean electric  
10 drilling machine. Electric motor 422 turns shaft 424 that  
11 rotates the rotary drill bit 426 that drills borehole 428 in  
12 geological formation 430. First anchor and weight on bit  
13 mechanism (AWOBM) 432 is connected to second anchor and  
14 weight on bit mechanism (AWOBM) 434 by extensible shaft 436,  
15 which elements comprise an anchor mechanism. Shaft 438  
16 connects the female side of universal mud and electrical  
17 connector 440 to the male side of universal mud and  
18 electrical connector 442. Progressing cavity pump 444 is  
19 driven by its pump motor 446. Inflatable seal 448 surrounds  
20 the progressing cavity pump that makes a positive seal  
21 against the borehole wall of geological formation 449. The  
22 progressing cavity pump has inlet 450 and outlet 452. The  
23 inflatable seal 448 and the progressing cavity pump form a  
24 Smart Shuttle that can be used to move the open hole  
25 subterranean electric drilling machine shown in Figure 18 in  
26 and out of the hole. Centralizer 454 is attached to the  
27 portions of the tool body having electronics 456 and  
28 bidirectional communications 458 with the surface. Mud  
29 carrying umbilical 460 is connected to the cable head 462  
30 that provides electrical power and mud to the open hole  
31 subterranean electric drilling machine. Mud from the surface  
32 through the umbilical proceeds down the interior of various  
33 elements of the drilling machine that are not shown for  
34 simplicity, and then mud laden cuttings return to the surface

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 through the annulus 464 between the borehole wall and the  
2 outside diameter of the umbilical. The arrows in  
3 Figure 18 show the direction of mud flow. The inflatable  
4 seal 448 surrounding the progressing cavity pump is partially  
5 collapsed during actual drilling operations to allow the mud  
6 to pass. The inflatable seal 448 is inflated when quickly  
7 transporting the open hole subterranean electric drilling in  
8 and out of the well. In view of the detailed description  
9 provided in Figure 6 and elsewhere, and in view of the  
10 description herein, it is now evident how the open hole  
11 subterranean electric drilling machine functions.  
12 Accordingly, no further detail will be presented here in the  
13 interests of brevity.

14  
15 **Figure 19** shows another subterranean electric drilling  
16 machine 466 that is drilling an open borehole in the earth.  
17 Element 466 is another embodiment of an open hole  
18 subterranean electric drilling machine called a "screw drive  
19 subterranean electric drilling machine". Figure 19 is  
20 similar to Figure 18. Elements 422, 424, 426, 432, 434, 436,  
21 438, 440 and 442 have been defined in relation to  
22 Figure 18.

23  
24 The fundamental change in Figure 19 is that the form of  
25 the Smart Shuttle shown in Figure 18 has been replaced by the  
26 screw translator device 468. Element 470 has an electric  
27 motor 472 (not shown for simplicity), related electronics,  
28 and bidirectional communications electronics. When electric  
29 motor 472 rotates the screw blades 474, then friction against  
30 the mud in the hole 476 causes the screw translation device  
31 468 to translate within the hole (if the anchor means of  
32 elements 432 and 434 are in their retracted positions).  
33 Reversing the rotation of the screw blades reverses the  
34 direction of translation within the borehole. The female

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 side of universal mud and electrical connector 478 is  
2 attached to the male side of universal mud and electrical  
3 connector 480, that is in turn connected to umbilical 482,  
4 however, elements 480 and 482 are not shown in Figure 19 for  
5 the purposes of simplicity. Centralizers 484 centralize  
6 element 470 within the wellbore 486. The arrows show the  
7 path of the mud flow during drilling operations. In view of  
8 the previous disclosure, it is evident how the screw drive  
9 subterranean electric drilling machine is used to drill the  
10 new borehole 488 in the geological formation 490.

11  
12 In another preferred embodiment in Figure 19, the  
13 screw blades 474 have a variable pitch, where the distance  
14 between successive blades is a smaller distance to the  
15 right-hand side of Figure 19 than to the left-hand side of  
16 Figure 19. In yet another preferred embodiment, the pitch  
17 between the screw blades 474 is variable and controlled by  
18 the surface computer system 26. Various embodiments of  
19 the "screw drive subterranean electric drilling machine" are  
20 further described in U.S. Disclosure Document No. 494374  
21 filed on May 26, 2001, that is entitled in part "Continuous  
22 Casting Boring Machine", an entire copy of which is  
23 incorporated herein by reference.

24  
25 **Figure 20** shows a cross section of another embodiment of  
26 an umbilical used for subterranean electric drilling machines  
27 and for open hole subterranean electric drilling machines. A  
28 version of Figure 20 was originally filed in the U.S.P.T.O.  
29 on the date of October 2, 2000 as a portion of U.S.  
30 Disclosure Document 480550. Umbilical 492 contains at least  
31 one insulated electrical conductor 494. Each such conductor  
32 has electrical copper conductors 496 encapsulated by  
33 electrical insulation 498. As shown in Figure 20, there are  
34 a total of 8 such insulated electrical conductors. In one

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 embodiment, the insulated electrical conductors may be chosen  
2 to be the same as shown in Figure 1. Also shown is high  
3 speed bidirectional data communications means 500, which may  
4 be a fiber optic cable or a coaxial cable. The insulated  
5 electrical conductors and the high speed bidirectional data  
6 communication means is encapsulated by first composite  
7 material 502. Second composite material 504 surrounds first  
8 composite material. As described above, the specific  
9 gravities of composite materials 502 and 504 may be  
10 engineered so that the umbilical 492 is substantially  
11 neutrally buoyant in wellbore fluids.  
12

13 In one preferred embodiment of the invention in  
14 Figure 20, the second composite material 504 is chosen for  
15 its good strength, durability against abrasion in the well,  
16 and perhaps for its electrical insulation properties. In one  
17 embodiment of Figure 20, the first composite material is  
18 chosen so with a particular specific gravity such that the  
19 overall umbilical is neutrally buoyant in typical well fluids  
20 (in 12 lb per gallon mud, for example, or in salt water, as  
21 another example). As previously discussed, syntactic foam  
22 materials having silica microspheres as provided by the  
23 Cumming Corporation ([www.emersoncumming.com](http://www.emersoncumming.com)) for such  
24 purposes. The details on pressure balanced silica  
25 microspheres in syntactic foam may be reviewed in Attachment  
26 28 to the Provisional Patent Application Number 60/384,964  
27 filed on June 3, 2002 that is entitled "Umbilicals for Well  
28 Conveyance Systems and Additional Smart Shuttles and Related  
29 Drilling Systems", an entire copy of which is incorporated  
30 herein by reference.  
31

32 The interior 506 of the umbilical is used to provide  
33 drilling fluids or cement downhole as required. Therefore,  
34 different embodiments of umbilicals provide electric power

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 downhole, bidirectional communications, and provide the  
2 ability to conduct fluids to and from the borehole, which are  
3 neutrally buoyant in the fluids present. Umbilicals handling  
4 well fluids are also useful with a number of well services  
5 including the use with straddle packers, injection tools, oil  
6 gas separators, flow line cleaning tools, valves, etc. In  
7 another preferred embodiment, the interior 506 may be filled  
8 with composite materials to provide extra strength for  
9 certain applications that is also substantially neutrally  
10 buoyant.

11  
12 **Figure 21** shows yet another neutrally buoyant composite  
13 umbilical in 12 lb per gallon mud. Outer spoolable composite  
14 tubing 508 has an OD shown by legend OD6, and has an ID shown  
15 by legend ID6. In a preferred embodiment, OD6 is equal to  
16 1.75 inches O.D., and ID6 is equal to 1.25 inches I.D. In  
17 one preferred embodiment, the composite tubing is chosen to  
18 have a specific gravity of 1.50.

19  
20 Three each 0.355 inch O.D. insulated No. 4 AWG Wires  
21 510, 512 and 514 are disposed within the I.D. of the  
22 spoolable composite tubing. Optical fiber 516 is also  
23 disposed within the spoolable composite tubing. The  
24 remaining available volume within the spoolable composite 518  
25 is then filled with pressure balanced silica microspheres in  
26 syntactic foam that has a specific gravity of 0.60. A  
27 calculation shows that this umbilical in 12 lbs/gallon mud  
28 weighs -50 lbs for every 1,000 feet. Assuming a coefficient  
29 of friction of 0.2, at 20 miles the umbilical could pull back  
30 with a frictional force of 1,056 lbs. So, this umbilical is  
31 substantially neutrally buoyant (or simply "neutrally  
32 buoyant" as defined below).

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In Figure 21, the insulated wire is rated at 14,000  
2 volts. This particular wire is Part Number FEP4FLEXSC  
3 available through Allied Wire & Cable located in Bridgeport,  
4 Pennsylvania. This wire was previously described in relation  
5 to Figure 1. As is evident from the discussion involving  
6 Figure 1, the three power conductors can provide 160  
7 horsepower (119 kilowatts) at 20 miles to do work at that  
8 distance. No fluids are conducted down the interior of this  
9 umbilical generally designated by element 520 in  
10 Figure 21. This umbilical is also useful for other  
11 applications to be discussed later.  
12

13           Selecting different specific gravities for the  
14 pressure balanced silica microspheres in syntactic foam  
15 that fills the volume within the spoolable composite 518  
16 allows different preferred embodiments to be designed to be  
17 neutrally buoyant within different well fluids having  
18 different densities. As a practical matter, an umbilical  
19 having a particular density will be used within a range of  
20 acceptable densities of well fluids.  
21

22           **Figure 22** is a schematic drawing that shows a ship  
23 performing subsea well servicing. Ship 522 in ocean 524  
24 possesses an umbilical carousel 526 having umbilical 528 that  
25 proceeds through lubricator 530 that houses Smart Shuttle  
26 532. Subsea well 534 on the ocean bottom 535 has mating  
27 equipment 536 that mates to mating equipment 538 of the  
28 lubricator 530. The lubricator is guided into place by  
29 remotely operated vehicle 540 obtaining its power and  
30 communications from umbilical 542. The umbilical carousel  
31 for umbilical 542 is not shown for simplicity.  
32

33           Upon entering the subsea well, the Smart Shuttle is to  
34 proceed through the base of the lubricator 544 and into the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 wellbore below (not shown in Figure 22). There, the Smart  
2 Shuttle is to perform a well workover that requires fluids to  
3 be injected into formation such as acids. Umbilical 528 may  
4 be selected to be a suitable umbilical including umbilical 2  
5 in Figure 1, and umbilical 492 in Figure 20. Equipment  
6 resembling what is shown in Figure 5 is on board the ship so  
7 that a computer system can control the workover operations.

8  
9 In this case, umbilical 542 need not provide fluids to  
10 the remotely operated vehicle 540. Therefore, umbilical 542  
11 may be chosen from umbilicals that includes umbilical 520 in  
12 Figure 21. Equipment resembling what is shown in Figure 5 is  
13 also onboard ship so that a computer system can control the  
14 remotely operated vehicle 540. The upper end of umbilical  
15 542 proceeding to its carousel is not shown on the left-hand  
16 side of Figure 22 for simplicity. In this case, the  
17 umbilical 542 is designed to have any desired buoyancy in sea  
18 water, that specifically includes densities greater than sea  
19 water, as is conventional in the industry. The apparatus and  
20 methods to control the power and communications is similar to  
21 that shown in Figures 2, 3, 4 and 5 and will not be repeated  
22 here for the purpose of brevity. In one preferred  
23 embodiment, over 60 kilowatts of power is provided by  
24 umbilical 542 to remotely operated vehicle 540. This power  
25 is provided to the load of the remotely operated vehicle,  
26 which in several preferred embodiments, is an electric motor  
27 that drives a propeller that provides thrust for the remotely  
28 operated vehicle. For simplicity, Figure 22 does not show a  
29 free floating remotely operated vehicle (ROV) tethered to the  
30 ship by a free floating umbilical.

31  
32 **Figure 23** is a schematic drawing similar to Figure 22.  
33 Figure 23 also shows a ship performing subsea well servicing.  
34 Ship 546 in ocean 548 possesses a first umbilical carousel

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 550 (not shown in Figure 23 for simplicity) having umbilical  
2 552 that proceeds through lubricator 554 that houses Smart  
3 Shuttle 556. Subsea well 558 on the ocean bottom 560 has  
4 mating equipment 562 that mates to mating equipment 564 of  
5 the lubricator 554. The lubricator is guided into place by  
6 first remotely operated vehicle 566 that obtains its power  
7 and communications from umbilical 568 that is deployed from  
8 second umbilical carousel 570 (not shown in Figure 23 for  
9 simplicity). In this case, the umbilical 568 is designed to  
10 have any desired buoyancy in sea water, that specifically  
11 includes densities greater than sea water as is conventional  
12 in the industry. The upper end of umbilical 568 proceeding  
13 to carousel 570 near the top of the crane on the right-hand  
14 side of Figure 23 is not shown for simplicity.

15  
16 Upon entering the subsea well, the Smart Shuttle is to  
17 proceed through the base of the lubricator 572 and into the  
18 wellbore below (not shown in Figure 22). There, the Smart  
19 Shuttle is to perform a well workover that does not  
20 necessarily require fluids to be injected into formation.  
21 Therefore, umbilical 552 may be selected to be a suitable  
22 umbilical including umbilical 520 in Figure 21. Equipment  
23 resembling what is shown in Figure 5 is on board the ship so  
24 that a computer system can control the Smart Shuttle, and any  
25 equipment attached to the Smart Shuttle, during workover  
26 operations.

27  
28 In this case, umbilical 568 need not provide fluids to  
29 first remotely operated vehicle 566. Therefore, umbilical  
30 568 may be chosen from umbilicals that includes umbilical  
31 520 in Figure 21. Equipment resembling what is shown in  
32 Figure 5 is also onboard ship so that a computer system can  
33 control first remotely operated vehicle 566. In this case,  
34 the umbilical 568 is designed to have any desired buoyancy in

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 sea water, that specifically includes densities greater than  
2 sea water as is conventional in the industry. The apparatus  
3 and methods to control the power and communications to first  
4 remotely operated vehicle are similar to that shown in  
5 Figures 2, 3, 4 and 5 and will not be repeated here for the  
6 purpose of brevity.

7  
8 Figure 23 shows second remotely operated vehicle 574  
9 that obtains its power and communications from umbilical 576  
10 that is deployed from third umbilical carousel 578 (not shown  
11 in Figure 23 for simplicity). Second remotely operated  
12 vehicle 574 is to suitably attach to the subsea well 558 and  
13 is to remove fluids from the wellbore. Therefore, umbilical  
14 576 may be selected to be a suitable umbilical including  
15 umbilical 2 in Figure 1 and umbilical 492 in Figure 20.  
16 The upper end of umbilical 576 proceeding to carousel 578  
17 near the top of the crane on the left-hand side of  
18 Figure 23 is not shown for simplicity. Equipment resembling  
19 what is shown in Figure 5 is on board the ship so that a  
20 computer system can control the operation of second remotely  
21 operated vehicle 574. In this case, the umbilical 576 is  
22 designed to have any desired buoyancy in sea water, that  
23 specifically includes densities greater than sea water as is  
24 conventional in the industry. In one preferred embodiment,  
25 over 60 kilowatts of power is provided by umbilical 576 to  
26 remotely operated vehicle 574. This power is provided to the  
27 load of the remotely operated vehicle, which in several  
28 preferred embodiments, is an electric motor that drives a  
29 propeller that provides thrust for the remotely operated  
30 vehicle. In other embodiments, this power is provided to an  
31 electric motor that drives a downhole pump. For simplicity,  
32 Figure 23 does not show a free floating remotely operated  
33 vehicle (ROV) tethered to the ship by a free floating  
34 umbilical.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 In Figures 22 and 23, the feedback control of the  
2 voltage, RPM, current, and other parameters of an electric  
3 motor within an remotely operated vehicle is accomplished by  
4 analogy to that disclosed in relation to the electric motor  
5 of the subterranean electric drilling machine. In the  
6 interests of brevity, this feedback control of remotely  
7 operated vehicles will not be further discussed.

8  
9 **Figure 24** shows one embodiment of the Smart Shuttle®  
10 generally designated with the numeral 580 that is located  
11 within a "pipe means" 582 that includes a casing, drill pipe,  
12 tubing, etc. The Smart Shuttle is comprised of a progressive  
13 cavity pump 584 that has a rotor 586 and stator 588 as is  
14 typical of such pumps. The progressive cavity pump is  
15 coupled to gear box 590 that is in turn coupled to the  
16 electrical submersible motor 592, which in turn is connected  
17 to electronics assembly 594 having any downhole computer, the  
18 downhole sensors, and communications system, which in turn is  
19 connected by the quick change collar 596 to the umbilical  
20 head 598 that is connected the umbilical 600.

21  
22 The lower wiper plug assembly 602 has sealing lobe 604  
23 and this assembly is firmly attached to the body of the  
24 progressive cavity pump at the location shown in  
25 Figure 24. Lower wiper plug assembly has lower bypass  
26 passage 606 which has electrically operated valves 608 and  
27 610. The upper wiper plug assembly 612 has sealing lobe 614  
28 and this assembly is firmly attached to the sections of the  
29 apparatus having the gear box and the electrical submersible  
30 motor at the location shown in Figure 24. The upper wiper  
31 assembly also has permanently open upper bypass port 616 in  
32 the embodiment shown in Figure 24.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           In terms of Figure 24, and when the electrical  
2           submersible motor is suitably turning the rotor of the  
3           progressive cavity pump (PCP), a volume of fluid  $\Delta V_2$  per unit  
4           time in the wellbore is pumped into the lower side port 618  
5           of the PCP and out of the upper side port 620 of the PCP.  
6           With valves 608 and 610 closed, the fluid  $\Delta V_2$  is then forced  
7           through the upper bypass port 616 into the portion of the  
8           well above the upper surface of the upper wiper plug  
9           assembly. In this manner, the Smart Shuttle is then forced  
10          downward into the wellbore. The Retrieval Sub 620 is  
11          attached to the body of the Smart Shuttle by quick change  
12          collar 622 that in turn is connected to the lower body of the  
13          progressive cavity pump. This, and related embodiments of  
14          the Smart Shuttle is used to transport equipment attached to  
15          the Retrieval Sub into wells and out of wells. The Smart  
16          Shuttle is an example of a "well conveyance means", or  
17          simply, a "conveyance means". Fluid conduction means 624 is  
18          able to conduct any fluids available from umbilical 600  
19          through the Retrieval Sub 620, although that fluid conduction  
20          means 624 is not shown in Figure 24 for simplicity. Fluid  
21          conduction means 624 is fabricated using tubing and  
22          technology currently available in the oil and gas industry.

23  
24          **Figure 25** shows another well conveyance means.  
25          Umbilical 626 possesses one or more electrical conductors.  
26          In several preferred embodiments, umbilical 626 possesses one  
27          or more high power electrical conductors. Umbilical head 628  
28          connects the umbilical to tractor conveyor 630. The tractor  
29          conveyor has at least one friction wheel 632 which engages  
30          the interior of pipe 634. The tractor conveyor has four  
31          friction wheels as shown in Figure 25. Quick change collar  
32          assembly 635 connects the tractor conveyor to the Retrieval  
33          Sub 636.

34  
  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           The tractor conveyor 630 with its Retrieval Sub 636  
2 installed in Figure 25 is an example of a "tractor conveyance  
3 means", a "tractor deployer", or a "downhole tractor  
4 deployment device". Electrical energy delivered via the  
5 umbilical to the tractor conveyor is used to drive electrical  
6 motors and/or electro-hydraulic systems 637 to provide  
7 rotational energy to the friction wheels (although the  
8 details of element 637 are not shown in Figure 25 for  
9 simplicity). That rotational energy causes the tractor  
10 conveyor to move within the well.

11  
12           The tractor conveyance means in Figure 25 provides  
13 similar operational features as different embodiments  
14 previously described heretofore as Smart Shuttles. Fluid  
15 conduction means 638 is able to conduct any fluids available  
16 from umbilical 626 through the Retrieval Sub 636, although  
17 that fluid conduction means 638 is not shown in Figure 24 for  
18 simplicity. Fluid conduction means 638 is fabricated using  
19 tubing and technology currently available in the oil and gas  
20 industry.

21  
22           By analogy with the Smart Shuttle, one embodiment of  
23 the tractor conveyance means may be used as a portion of an  
24 "automated well drilling and completion system". As  
25 described herein, this automated system is called the  
26 "tractor conveyance system" or the "automated tractor  
27 conveyance system". The tractor conveyance means is  
28 substantially under the control of a computer system that  
29 executes a sequence of programmed steps that has at least one  
30 computer system located on the surface of the earth and has  
31 means to convey at least one completion device attached to  
32 the Retrieval Sub into the wellbore under the automated  
33 control of the computer system. The automated system has at  
34 least one sensor means located within the tractor conveyance

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 means, has first communications means that provides commands  
2 from the computer system to the tractor conveyance means, has  
3 second communications means that provides information from  
4 the sensor means to the computer system, where the execution  
5 of the programmed steps of the computer system to control the  
6 tractor conveyance means takes into account information  
7 received from the sensor means to optimize the steps executed  
8 by the computer system to drill and complete the well.

9  
10 The Retrieval Sub can be attached to a number of the  
11 devices shown in **Figure 26**. Those devices include any  
12 commercial tool or device 640; any logging tool 642; any  
13 torque reaction centralizer 644; any scraper 646; any  
14 perforating tool 648; any flow meter 650; any Downhole Rig  
15 with rotary bit 652; any Universal Completion Device™ 654;  
16 any straddle packer 656; any injection tool 658; any oil/gas  
17 separator 660; any flow line cleaning tool 662; any casing  
18 expanding tool 664; any plug 666; any valve 668; and any  
19 locking mechanism 670. These different tools are either  
20 defined in applicant's applications or are tools used in the  
21 oil and gas industry. The point is that any of these devices  
22 can be attached to the Retrieval Sub of the Cased Hole Smart  
23 Shuttle 672 or to the Retrieval Sub of the Open Hole Smart  
24 Shuttle 674. These devices may similarly be attached to the  
25 Retrieval Sub of the tractor conveyance means. Each such  
26 device in this paragraph may be called a "completion device"  
27 and collectively, these may be referenced as "completion  
28 devices".

29  
30 These devices specified in the previous paragraph may be  
31 used for a variety of different purposes in the oil and gas  
32 industry. Many of those tools can be used to serve wells.  
33 Please refer to **Figure 27** that shows a diagrammatic  
34 representation of functions that may be performed with the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Smart Shuttle or the Well Locomotive. Figure 27 shows that  
2 the Smart Shuttle or the Well Locomotive shown  
3 diagrammatically as element 676 may be used for the purposes  
4 of completion 678 (ie., to perform completion services  
5 on a well); production & maintenance 680 (ie., to perform  
6 production and maintenance services on a well); enhanced  
7 recovery 682 (ie., to perform enhanced recovery services on a  
8 well); and for drilling 684. Under completion functions, or  
9 "completion services", the Smart Shuttle and Well Locomotive  
10 may be used for the completion of extended reach lateral  
11 wells 686; for logging and perforating 688; for stimulation  
12 and fluid services 690; may be used to install the Universal  
13 Completion Device™ 692; and may be used to install completion  
14 hardware such as plugs, valves, gages, etc. 694. Under  
15 production and maintenance functions, or "production and  
16 maintenance services", the Smart Shuttle and Well Locomotive  
17 may be used for flow assurance services 696; for maintenance  
18 and repair 698; for workovers, that include logging,  
19 perforating, etc., 700; and for reservoir monitoring and  
20 control 702. Under enhanced recovery functions, or "enhanced  
21 recovery services", the Smart Shuttle and Well Locomotive may  
22 be used for recompletions, well extensions, and laterals 704;  
23 to install downhole separators 706; to perform artificial  
24 lift 708; to facilitate downhole injection 710; and for fluid  
25 services 712. Under drilling functions, or under "drilling  
26 services", the Smart Shuttle and the Well Locomotive may be  
27 used for casing drilling purposes 714; for liner drainhole  
28 drilling purposes 716; for coiled tubing drilling 718; and  
29 for extended reach lateral drilling 720. Extensive details  
30 are provided in about each of these functions in the related  
31 U.S. Disclosure Documents and in the related Provisional  
32 Patent Applications cited above.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           Any one or more of the functions provided in the  
2 previous paragraph is called a "well service". Two or more  
3 of such functions are called "well services". The execution  
4 of the programmed steps of the automated computer system to  
5 control the Smart Shuttle®, or tractor conveyance means,  
6 takes into account information received from the sensor means  
7 within the tractor conveyance means to optimize the steps  
8 executed by the computer system to service the well.  
9

10           The above umbilicals have stated calculations pertaining  
11 to lengths of 20 miles. However, the umbilicals can be any  
12 length from 100's of feet to 20 miles. The extreme distance  
13 of 20 miles was chosen to show neutrally buoyant umbilicals  
14 can provide high power and high speed data communications at  
15 great distances that has heretofore not been recognized in  
16 the oil and gas industry.  
17

18           As stated previously, the phrase "substantially  
19 neutrally buoyant", "essentially neutrally buoyant", "near  
20 neutral buoyant", and "approximately neutrally buoyant" may  
21 be used interchangeably. In several preferred embodiments of  
22 the invention, the meaning of these terms is that in the  
23 presence of the well fluids, that the buoyancy of the  
24 umbilical causes the typical friction of the umbilical  
25 against the well to be substantially reduced.  
26

27           As stated earlier, the tractor conveyor tractor conveyor  
28 630 with its Retrieval Sub 636 in Figure 25 is an example of  
29 a "conveyance means", a "tractor conveyance means", a  
30 "tractor deployer", or a "downhole tractor deployment  
31 device". There are many "well tractors", or devices related  
32 to well tractors, a selection of which are described in the  
33 following documents: U.S. Patent Nos. 6,347,674; 6,345,669;  
34 6,318,470; 6,296,066; 6,273,189; 6,257,332; 6,241,031;

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 6,241,028; 6,225,719; 6,179,058; 6,179,055; 6,173,787;  
2 6,089,323; 6,082,461; 5,954,131; 5,794,703; 5,547,314;  
3 5,375,668; 5,209,304; 5,184,676; 5,121,694; 5,018,451;  
4 5,040,619; 4,960,173; 4,686,653; 4,643,377; 4,624,306;  
5 4,570,709; 4,463,814; 4,243,099; 4,192,380; 4,085,808;  
6 4,071,086; 4,031,750; 3,969,950; 3,890,905; 3,888,319;  
7 3,827,512; in EP0564500B1; and in WO9806927; WO9521987;  
8 WO9318277; and WO9116520; entire copies of which are  
9 incorporated herein by reference. Entire copies of the 39  
10 cited references in this paragraph are incorporated herein by  
11 reference. Many of these devices are means to cause or  
12 generate movement within wellbores. Such "movement means"  
13 may be attached to a device similar to the Retrieval Sub 636.  
14 Devices similar to Retrieval Sub 636 are called "retrieval  
15 means". So, movement means may be coupled to retrieval means  
16 to make a "tractor conveyance means", or tractor deployers,  
17 or downhole tractor deployment devices.

18  
19 In view of the above, several embodiments of this  
20 invention use a closed-loop system to service a well for  
21 producing hydrocarbons from a borehole in the earth having at  
22 least one computer system located on the surface of the  
23 earth, which possess at least one conveyance means to convey  
24 at least one completion device into the borehole under the  
25 automated control of the computer system that executes a  
26 series of programmed steps, which possess at least one sensor  
27 means located within the conveyance means, which have first  
28 communications means that provides commands from the  
29 computer system to the conveyance means and possessing second  
30 communications means that provides information from the  
31 sensor means to the computer system, whereby the execution of  
32 the programmed steps by the computer system to control the  
33 conveyance means takes into account information received from  
34 the sensor means to optimize the steps executed by the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 computer to service the well. Such system is called a  
2 "closed-loop tractor conveyance system". The closed-loop  
3 system may also be used to monitor and control production of  
4 hydrocarbons from the wellbore.  
5

6 The above described umbilicals, and other variations of  
7 such umbilicals that meet the above defined operational  
8 specifications, could be manufactured on a contractual basis  
9 by a firm called ABB Offshore Systems that is located in  
10 Stavanger, Norway, that has its U.S.A. office that may be  
11 reached through ABB Offshore Systems, Inc., having the  
12 address of 8909 Jackrabbit Road, Houston, Texas 77095, having  
13 the telephone number of (281) 855-3200, that has its website  
14 that can be reached through [www.abb.com](http://www.abb.com). The above described  
15 umbilicals, and other variations of such umbilicals that meet  
16 the above defined operational specifications, might be  
17 manufactured on a contractual basis by a firm called the  
18 Fiberspar Corporation that may be reached at 28 Patterson  
19 Brook Road, West Warehan, Massachusetts 02576, having the  
20 telephone number (508) 291-9000, which has its website at  
21 [www.fiberspar.com](http://www.fiberspar.com). This firm is capable of supplying various  
22 spoolable composite tubes capable of being spooled onto a  
23 reel having relevant anisotropic characteristic, a specified  
24 burst pressure, a specified collapse pressure, a specified  
25 tensile strength, a specified compression strength, a  
26 specified load carrying capacity, which is also bendable.  
27 Some of these tubes include an inner liner material, an  
28 interface layer, fiber composite layers, a pressure barrier  
29 layer, and an outer protective layer. The fiber composite  
30 layers can have triaxial braid structure. The composites  
31 may be fabricated from carbon-based composites.  
32

33 In the above, syntactic foam materials were described in  
34 various preferred embodiments to change the apparent buoyancy

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 of an umbilical in the presence of other surrounding fluids.  
2 However, any material of a different density may be used for  
3 this purpose.  
4

5 A preferred embodiment above has described an apparatus  
6 to drill oil and gas wells having subterranean electric  
7 drilling machine disposed in a wellbore such as that shown  
8 as element 94 Figure 6. The subterranean electric drilling  
9 machine possesses at least one downhole electric motor that  
10 is shown as element 114 in Figure 6. This electric motor  
11 rotates a rotary drill bit identified as elements 106, 110  
12 and 112 in Figure 6. This electric motor rotates the drill  
13 bit at a selected RPM determined by the frequency, current  
14 and voltage applied to input terminals of the electric motor  
15 as shown in Figure 2 and in Figure 3. One advantage of such  
16 an electrically operated drill bit operating at relatively  
17 high RPM is that it produces very fine rock cuttings that are  
18 easily transported to the surface by mud flow. The input  
19 terminals of the electric motor are identified as the inputs  
20 to the downhole electrical load 22 in Figure 2, which in  
21 several embodiments is an electric motor, which are also  
22 attached to the sensing unit 24. The input terminals of the  
23 electric motor are shown as the leads attached to either side  
24 of element 34 in Figure 2. The electric motor operates  
25 properly with a particular voltage level applied to its  
26 electrical input. Please refer to the preferred embodiment  
27 discussed in relation to electric motor 34 in Figure 3. It  
28 is important to note that in several preferred embodiments,  
29 the electrical motor 34 in Figure 3 is dissipating 160  
30 horsepower (119 kilowatts). A surface power supply means  
31 located on the surface of the earth provides a voltage output  
32 that is identified with element 20 in Figure 2. An umbilical  
33 means disposed in the wellbore surrounded by well fluids  
34 connecting the surface power supply means to the subterranean

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 electric drilling machine provides electrical power to the  
2 electrical input of the electric motor. For example, such an  
3 umbilical means is shown as element 116 in Figure 6 and in  
4 Figure 9. The umbilical means possesses insulated electric  
5 wires as shown in Figures 1, and 20. The umbilical means  
6 possess high speed data communications means such as high  
7 speed data link 14 in Figure 1. The umbilical means  
8 possesses a fluid conduit for conveying drilling fluids  
9 through the interior of the umbilical means such as element 8  
10 in Figure 1 and 506 in Figure 20. The preferred embodiment  
11 has means to measure first voltage applied to the first  
12 electrical input of the electrical motor as shown by element  
13 24 in Figure 2. The preferred embodiment possesses means to  
14 transmit information related to the measured first voltage  
15 through a high speed data communications means within the  
16 umbilical to a computer located on the surface of the earth  
17 by using the high speed data link 14 in Figure 1. The  
18 embodiment further possesses computer controlled means to  
19 adjust the first voltage output as shown by element 28 in  
20 Figure 2. The computer system 26 in Figure 2 is used to  
21 maintain first voltage input at a particular voltage level to  
22 provide proper operation of the electric motor within the  
23 subterranean electric drilling machine.

24  
25 In several preferred embodiments, the electric  
26 motor 34 in Figure 3 dissipates in excess of 60 kilowatts.  
27 This is important because it is the recollection of the  
28 inventors that several scientists and senior managers of a  
29 major oil services company stated their opinions that it  
30 would be impossible to provide over 60 kilowatts to an  
31 electric motor, or any other electrical load, at distances of  
32 up to 20 miles from a wellsite through any type of reasonably  
33 sized umbilical that would be practical to use within  
34 wellbores. According to the recollection of the inventors,

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 these senior managers and scientists clearly stated their  
2 opinions before the invention herein was disclosed to those  
3 particular individuals. Yet further from this recollection,  
4 it apparently never occurred to these same scientists and  
5 senior managers that any such umbilical delivering in excess  
6 of 60 kilowatts could also be neutrally buoyant. However,  
7 only after disclosure of the invention herein to those  
8 scientists and senior managers, did they apparently accept  
9 that such umbilicals could be designed and built.  
10 Accordingly, because the individuals involved are well known  
11 in the oil and gas industry, and are experts in fields  
12 directly pertaining to the invention, the preferred  
13 embodiment described herein is not obvious to one having  
14 ordinary skill in the art.

15  
16 Therefore, a preferred embodiment is an apparatus to  
17 drill oil and gas wells comprising:

18  
19 (a) a subterranean electric drilling machine disposed in a  
20 wellbore that possesses at least one electric motor that  
21 rotates a rotary drill bit at a selected RPM, whereby the  
22 electric motor possesses first electrical input, whereby the  
23 electric motor properly operates with a particular voltage  
24 level applied to first electrical input, and whereby the  
25 electric motor dissipates in excess of 60 kilowatts with the  
26 particular voltage level applied to the first electrical  
27 input;

28  
29 (b) surface power supply means located on the surface of the  
30 earth providing first voltage output;

31  
32 (c) umbilical means disposed in the wellbore surrounded by  
33 well fluids connecting the surface power supply means to the  
34 subterranean electric drilling machine that provides

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 electrical power to the first electrical input of the  
2 electric motor, whereby the umbilical means possesses  
3 insulated electric wires, whereby the umbilical means  
4 possesses high speed data communications means, and whereby  
5 the umbilical possesses a fluid conduit for conveying  
6 drilling fluids through the interior of the  
7 umbilical means;

8  
9 (d) means to measure first voltage applied to the first  
10 electrical input of the electrical motor;

11  
12 (e) means to transmit information related to the measured  
13 first voltage through the high speed data communications  
14 means within the umbilical to a computer located on the  
15 surface of the earth;

16  
17 (f) computer controlled means to adjust the first voltage  
18 output so as to maintain first voltage input at the  
19 particular voltage level to provide proper operation of the  
20 electric motor within the subterranean electric drilling  
21 machine.

22  
23 Another preferred embodiment of the invention described  
24 in the previous paragraph provides an umbilical means that  
25 a approximately neutrally buoyant within the well fluids to  
26 reduce the frictional drag on the neutrally buoyant  
27 umbilical.

28  
29 In view of the above disclosure, yet another preferred  
30 embodiment is the method of feed-back control of an electric  
31 motor having at least one voltage input located within a  
32 subterranean electric drilling machine located in a borehole  
33 that dissipates at least 60 kilowatts that receives power  
34 from a surface power supply through an umbilical surrounded

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 by well fluids that possesses at least two insulated electric  
2 wires, whereby the umbilical also possesses high speed data  
3 link for data communications, comprising the steps of:

4  
5 (a) measuring the voltage input to the electric motor;

6  
7 (b) sending information related to the measured voltage input  
8 through the high speed data link to a computer located on the  
9 surface of the earth; and

10  
11 (c) using the computer to adjust the voltage output of the  
12 surface power supply that is used to control the voltage  
13 input to the electrical motor.

14  
15 Another preferred embodiment of the invention described  
16 in the previous paragraph provides an umbilical that is  
17 a approximately neutrally buoyant within the well fluids to  
18 reduce the frictional drag on the umbilical.

19  
20 In view of the above disclosure, yet another preferred  
21 embodiment is the method of providing in excess of 60  
22 kilowatts of electrical power to the electrical motor of a  
23 subterranean electric drilling machine through a  
24 substantially neutrally buoyant composite umbilical  
25 containing electrical conductors to reduce the frictional  
26 drag on the neutrally buoyant umbilical.

27  
28 In view of the disclosure related to Figures 22 and 23,  
29 it is evident that the invention may be used to provide  
30 electrical power to an electric motor located within a  
31 remotely operated vehicle. Accordingly, a preferred  
32 embodiment of the invention provides a method of feed-back  
33 control of an electric motor having at least one voltage  
34 input located within a remotely operated vehicle that

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1       dissipates at least 60 kilowatts that receives power from a  
2       power supply located on a ship through an umbilical  
3       surrounded by sea water that possesses at least two insulated  
4       electric wires, whereby the umbilical also possesses high  
5       speed data link for data communications, comprising the  
6       steps of:

7  
8       (a) measuring the voltage input to the electric motor;

9  
10       (b) sending information related to the measured voltage input  
11       through the high speed data link to a computer located on the  
12       ship; and

13  
14       (c) using the computer to adjust the voltage output of the  
15       power supply located on the ship that is used to control  
16       the voltage input to the electrical motor.

17  
18       Accordingly, yet another preferred embodiment of the  
19       invention is the method of providing in excess of 60  
20       kilowatts of electrical power to the electric motor of a  
21       remotely operated vehicle through an umbilical containing  
22       electrical conductors and at least one high speed data  
23       communications means.

24  
25       Several of the above preferred embodiments describe  
26       the Subterranean Electric Drilling Machine™, or simply the  
27       Subterranean Drilling Machine™ (SDM™), that performs  
28       Subterranean Electric Drilling™ (SED™) that is used to  
29       construct a Subterranean Electric Drilled Monobore Well™  
30       or an SED Monobore Well™. Several of the above preferred  
31       embodiments also describe the Subterranean Liner Expansion  
32       Tool™ (SLET™) otherwise called the Casing Expansion Tool™  
33       (CET™).

34  
  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Rig-3**

1           **Figure 28** shows a fixed platform 800 penetrating ocean  
2 water 804 that is anchored in the ocean bottom at a  
3 particular location 808. Production flowline 812 and  
4 production flowline 816 carry oil and gas production to the  
5 fixed platform. Steel cased well 820 penetrates the ocean  
6 bottom at location 824 which is terminated in the first  
7 subsea Xmas Tree 828. Oil and gas production flows from the  
8 first Xmas Tree through jumper 832 to manifold 836. Oil and  
9 gas production flows from manifold 836 through flowlines 812  
10 and 816 to the TLP 800. Subsea control umbilical 840 is  
11 connected to mid-flowline tie-in manifold 844 for a second  
12 Xmas Tree that in turn is connected to subsea control  
13 umbilical 848 that proceeds to the Umbilical Termination  
14 Assembly ("UTA") 852. (The second Xmas Tree is not shown in  
15 Figure 28 for the purposes of simplicity.) Control signals  
16 are then sent through the Flying Leads, such as Flying Lead  
17 856, that in turn are connected to the first Xmas Tree to  
18 control well production. Mid-flowline tie-in manifold 844 is  
19 connected to jumper 860 that is connected to assembly 864.  
20 Oil and gas production also flows through flowline 868 to  
21 assembly 864 and through flowline 872 to the TLP.

22  
23           Installations such as shown in Figure 28 are typical in  
24 the Gulf of Mexico. Figure 28 shows a typical satellite  
25 field system. In some cases, the flowlines are single steel  
26 pipes, which are subject to wax build-up and to other  
27 blockage problems such as hydrates, scales or other solids  
28 forming from the production due to a loss in static pressure  
29 or in temperature, or to any other process or mechanism.  
30 In other cases, steel pipe-in-pipe systems with the outer  
31 pipe being externally insulated and hot water circulated  
32 through the annulus between the two pipes is used to heat the  
33 flowlines to avoid wax build-up and other blockage problems.

34  
"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."  
Rig-3

1 In Figure 28, the "host" is illustrated as a fixed  
2 platform. However, many other "hosts" are possible including  
3 the following: an FPSO (a "Floating, Processing, Storage and  
4 Offloading" facility); all types floating platforms; Tension  
5 Leg Platforms ("TLP's"); SPARS; floating platforms with dry  
6 tree risers including TLP's and SPARS; etc. Here a SPAR is a  
7 floating moored structure for offshore drilling and/or  
8 production operations, which is typically a deep draft  
9 structure with very low motions due to the environment, and  
10 is especially suited for deepwater, and often supports dry  
11 surface trees. For the purposes of this invention, a  
12 "host" may include any of the previously listed structures  
13 associated with the formal definition of an "offshore  
14 platform" as defined above in quotes.

15  
16 **Figure 29** shows another "host" system. Figure 29 shows  
17 Floating Production, Storage, and Offloading structure (FPSO)  
18 876 loading crude through flexible line 880 to shuttle tanker  
19 884 located on ocean surface 888. This is a typical FPSO  
20 arrangement as used in offshore Brazil and West Africa.  
21 Mooring component 892 is anchored to the sea bottom at  
22 location 896. Mooring component 900 is anchored to sea  
23 bottom at location 904. Subsea wellhead 908 at location 912  
24 on the sea bottom passes crude production through flowline  
25 916 to the FPSO. Subsea wellhead 920 at location 924 on the  
26 sea bottom passes crude production through flowline 928 to  
27 the FPSO. Subsea wellhead 932 at location 936 on the sea  
28 bottom passes crude production through flowline 940 to the  
29 FPSO. Subsea wellhead 944 at location 948 on the sea bottom  
30 passes crude production through flowline 952 to the FPSO.  
31 Often, the flowlines are single pipes that are subject to  
32 blockage from wax and other substances.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 Another host is shown in **Figure 30**. Here floating  
2 platform 956 is shown floating in ocean 960 having ocean  
3 surface 964. Steel cased well 968 penetrates the sea bottom  
4 972 at location 974, and is attached to wellhead 976. Steel  
5 flowline 980 is attached to wellhead 976 and lies on sea  
6 bottom 972 for a distance until it raises off the sea bottom  
7 at position 984. The upper extremity of the flowline 988,  
8 also known as a riser, is connected to the floating platform,  
9 and the riser is suspended below the floating platform having  
10 a minimum radius of curvature R at location 992 shown in  
11 Figure 30.

12  
13 The Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly  
14 ("EFIHA") is generally shown as element 996 in Figure 30.  
15 The EFIHA shown in Figure 30 possesses Electrically Heated  
16 Composite Umbilical ("EHCUC") 1000. The inside diameter of  
17 the steel flowline 980 is shown by the legend ID(FL) in  
18 Figure 30. The wall thickness of the steel flowline 980 is  
19 WT(FL), which is not shown in Figure 30 in the interests of  
20 brevity. The outside diameter of the EHCUC is shown by the  
21 legend OD(IH) in Figure 30. The wall thickness of the EHCUC  
22 is WT(IH), which is not shown in Figure 30 in the interests  
23 of brevity. Hydraulic seal 1004 is attached to the outside  
24 diameter of the EFIHA at location 1008. Hydraulic seal 1004  
25 may be comprised of multiple individual hydraulic sealing  
26 elements 1012, 1016, 1020, and 1024, which four elements are  
27 shown in Figure 30, but which are not so labeled in the  
28 interests of simplicity.

29  
30 Hydraulic pressure may be generated with hydraulic  
31 equipment 1030 (not shown in the interests of simplicity in  
32 Figure 30) located on the floating platform 956. This  
33 hydraulic pressure may be applied to the annular space  
34 defined by the difference between the inside diameter of the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

flowline ID(FL) and the outside diameter of the EHCU that is OD(IH) that is shown as region 1034 in Figure 30. The hydraulic pressure applied in region 1034 in Figure 30 is defined as P(EFIHA). This pressure acts on the hydraulic seal 1004 that generates force F(EFIHA) which is applied to the EFIHA that is provided by the following equation:

$$F(EFIHA) = \pi \left\{ \left[ ID(FL)/2 \right]^2 - \left[ OD(IH)/2 \right]^2 \right\} \left\{ P(EFIHA) \right\}$$

Equation 2.

The force shown in Equation 2 is used to force the EFIHA down into the steel flowline. In one preferred embodiment of the invention, if wellhead 976 is set by control means 1038 so that no fluid may flow back into the well, then when the EFIHA is forced downward into the well by hydraulic force F(EFIHA), any displaced fluid in the sealed system flows up the inside of the EFIHA through region 1042 within the EFIHA and to the floating platform at location 1046. This is called "backflow" within the EFIHA. So, in this case, the displaced fluid flows up the interior of the F(EFIHA) to the floating platform.

The EFIHA also possesses additional centralizing and hydraulic sealing elements 1048 and 1052. Instrumentation assembly and control assembly 1056 provides measurements of the ambient well conditions such as the pressure P(EFIHA), temperature (EFIHA), the depth, etc. The force used to drive the EFIHA into the well results in a downward velocity V(EFIHA) that may be a function of time. This downward velocity V(EFIHA) influences the pressure P(EFIHA). The

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 force F(EFIHA) is adjusted so that the pressure P(EFIHA) does  
2 not exceed some predetermined maximum pressure P(EFIHA-MAX).  
3 The Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCUC") 1000  
4 possesses internal electric heater wires, wires to power the  
5 instrumentation and control assembly 1056, means for high  
6 speed bidirectional communications, and power wires for any  
7 other services or purposes. As one example, wires 494 and  
8 496 in the umbilical shown in Figure 20 may be used instead  
9 as electrical resistors to generate heat to heat the EHCUC.  
10 In this case, the heat delivered to the EHCUC is equal to the  
11 following:

$$12 \quad H(EHCUC) = [ I(EHCUC) ]^2 R(EHCUC)$$

13  
14  
15  
16 Equation 3.

17  
18  
19 Here, H(EHCUC) is the power in watts ("heat") delivered  
20 to the EHCUC, the symbol I is the time averaged electrical  
21 current flowing through wires 494 and 496 in Figure 20, and  
22 R(EHCUC) is the combined series resistance of wires 494  
23 and 496. The current I is caused to flow through the  
24 resistors by a power supply that is not shown for simplicity.

25  
26 Instrumentation and control assembly 1056 may be used to  
27 sense the depth of the EHCUC and the distance between the end  
28 of the EHCUC and the wellhead shown by the legend Z(IH).  
29 In one preferred embodiment of the invention, when Z(IH)  
30 reaches a predetermined value, then at least one hydraulic  
31 locking mechanism (not shown in Figure 30 for simplicity)  
32 within instrumentation and control assembly 1056 may be used  
33 to lock the EHCUC into place within the well.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           In one preferred embodiment of the invention, when it is  
2 time to retrieve the EHCUC, and with wellhead 976 is set by  
3 control means 1038 so that no fluids may flow into the  
4 wellhead, then pressuring up the interior of region 1042 will  
5 apply pressure to the downhole side of seal 1004 and force  
6 the EHCUC towards the floating platform 956 and out of the  
7 well. Suitable spooling and handling equipment for the EHCUC  
8 are provided on the floating platform 988 which are not shown  
9 in Figure 30 in the interests of simplicity. In another  
10 preferred embodiment, the EHCUC is simply pulled out of the  
11 well by the spooling and handling equipment.  
12

13           In another preferred embodiment, and after the EFIHA is  
14 locked in place within the well, a cross-over valve 1055 (not  
15 shown in Figure 30 for simplicity) can be located at location  
16 1058 which location is towards the floating platform from the  
17 position of seal 1004. When production is allowed to flow to  
18 the floating platform, this cross-over valve can be set to  
19 any one of three states ("State 1", "State 2", and  
20 "State 3"). In State 1, oil and gas production would proceed  
21 through the interior of EHCUC to the floating platform.  
22 For example, in State 1, oil and gas production would flow  
23 through region 1057 of the EHCUC that is located towards the  
24 floating platform from seal 1004. In State 2, oil and gas  
25 production would flow through region 1058 located between the  
26 outside diameter of the EHCUC and the inside diameter of the  
27 flowline. State 2 has the advantage that all the heat  
28 generated in the EHCUC is transferred to the surrounding  
29 production. In State 3, the oil and gas production would  
30 flow through both regions 1057 and 1058 simultaneously.  
31 There are many variations of the invention.  
32

33           The next 12 paragraphs are paraphrased from page 66,  
34 line 41, to page 68, line 38, of Serial No. 09/487,197, now

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 U.S. Patent 6,397,946 B1, that issued on June 4, 2003, having  
2 the inventor of William Banning Vail III, that was  
3 incorporated entirely by reference in co-pending  
4 Serial No. 10/223,025, having the Filing Date of 8/15/2002,  
5 that is entitled "High Power Umbilicals for Subterranean  
6 Electric Drilling Machines and Remotely Operated Vehicles".  
7 These 12 paraphrased paragraphs originally related to  
8 Figure 23 in U.S. Patent 6,397,946, but now relate to  
9 **Figure 31** herein. In Figure 23 in U.S. Patent 6,397,946 B1,  
10 a coiled tubing was conveyed downhole. In Figure 31 herein,  
11 an Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly ("EFIHA")  
12 having an electrically heated composite umbilical ("EHCUC") is  
13 conveyed into a flowline. In addition, an extra "0" was  
14 added to all numerals that appeared in the corresponding text  
15 of U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 B1, so for example element 780  
16 in Figure 23 in U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 is now labeled as  
17 element 7800 in Figure 31 herein.

18  
19 However, the Smart Shuttles may be conveyed downhole  
20 with an attached Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly  
21 ("EFIHA") having an electrically heated composite umbilical  
22 ("EHCUC") that is conveyed into a flowline. Such a Smart  
23 Shuttle with Retrieval Sub that is conveyed downhole that is  
24 attached to an EHCUC is shown in Figure 31 herein. In several  
25 preferred embodiments of the invention, the EHCUC conveyed by  
26 the Smart Shuttle into the flowline as shown in Figure 31 may  
27 be forced into the flowline by three different mechanisms:  
28 (a) by using mechanical "injectors" at the surface to force  
29 the coiled tubing downward into the flowline; (b) the PCP/ESM  
30 assembly may be used to assist by "pulling" the Smart Shuttle  
31 into the flowline; and (c) yet further, hydraulic forces on  
32 fluids from the surface may also force the Smart Shuttle into  
33 the flowline. That these three independent methods may be  
34 used to force the Smart Shuttle with its attached Retrieval

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Sub downward into the flowline will become better apparent  
2 with the following description of the elements in Figure 31.

3  
4 Most of the elements in Figure 31 through element 7200  
5 have been previously described in relation to Figure 23 in  
6 U.S. Patent 6,397,946 B1. The Progressive Cavity Pump is  
7 labeled with element 6800. The Progressive Cavity Pump is  
8 coupled to gear box 6830 that is in turn coupled to the  
9 Electrically Submersible Motor 6840, which in turn is  
10 connected to electronics assembly 6850 having any downhole  
11 computer, sensors, and communications system, which in turn  
12 is connected to the quick change collar 7700. The assembly  
13 below the quick change collar in Figure 31 is often referred  
14 to as the Progressive Cavity Pump/Electrical Submersible  
15 Motor assembly that is abbreviated as the "PCP/ESM assembly".  
16 Therefore, the "PCP/ESM assembly" is attached to the quick  
17 change collar 7700 in Figure 31.

18  
19 In Figure 31, an Electric Flowline Immersion Heater  
20 Assembly ("EFIHA") that is generally shown as numeral 7722  
21 has an Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCUC") 7724  
22 that is conveyed into steel flowline 6782. Tubing  
23 Termination Assembly 7780 has threads 7800 that mate to the  
24 threaded end 7762 of EHCUC 7724. So, the Tubing Termination  
25 Assembly is inserted into the flowline and is attached to the  
26 threaded end 7762 of the EHCUC 7724. In one preferred  
27 embodiment, any fluids that flow into, or out of, the EHCUC  
28 are conducted to, and from, the interior of the flowline  
29 through fluid channel 7820. Valve 7832 located within fluid  
30 channel 7820 can be used to cut off any fluid flow through  
31 the channel. Valve 7832 may be open or closed as desired.  
32 For many of the following preferred embodiments, it is  
33 assumed that this valve 7832 is open unless explicitly stated  
34 otherwise. The wireline 7742 is connected to top submersible

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 plug 7840 that connects to lower submersible plug 7860 which  
2 in turn passes the electrical conductors from the wireline to  
3 the quick change collar. The bundle of electrical conductors  
4 passing to the quick changer collar is designated with the  
5 numeral 7880 in Figure 31. Within the quick change collar is  
6 yet another electrical plug assembly that provides power and  
7 electrical signals through a bundle of wires to the "PCP/ESM  
8 assembly" that is not shown in Figure 31 solely for the  
9 purposes of simplicity. Typical design and assembly  
10 procedures used in the industry are assumed throughout this  
11 specification. It is often the case that a quick change  
12 collar surrounds male and female mating electrical  
13 connectors, which is typically the case in "logging tools"  
14 used in the wireline logging industry. Those connectors mate  
15 at the location specified by the dashed line 7890 shown on  
16 the interior of the quick change collar in Figure 31.  
17

18 In addition, the Tubing Termination Assembly 7780 also  
19 possesses expandable packer 7900. Upon command from the  
20 surface, this expandable packer can be inflated within the  
21 flowline to seal against the flowline as may be required  
22 during typical well completion procedures, and typical  
23 workover procedures, that are used in the industry. This  
24 expandable packer can also be used for a second purpose of  
25 forcing the Smart Shuttle into the wellbore as described  
26 below. This packer can also be used for additional purposes  
27 as described below.  
28

29 With reference to Figure 31, the Smart Shuttle may  
30 be forced downhole by three mechanisms that are described  
31 in separate paragraphs as follows.  
32

33 In a first preferred embodiment of the invention,  
34 mechanical "injectors" at the surface are used to force the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly ("EFIHA") 7722  
2 and its electrically heated composite umbilical ("EHCUC") 7724  
3 into the flowline 6782. These mechanical "injectors" were  
4 previously described in U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 B1, an  
5 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.  
6

7 In a second preferred embodiment of the invention,  
8 the electrically energized Progressive Cavity Pump forces  
9 fluid  $\Delta V_2$  into the lower side port 7120 of the PCP and out of  
10 the upper side port 7140 of the PCP, and the Smart Shuttle is  
11 conveyed downhole. If this method is used by itself, and if  
12 expandable packer 7900 is in its deflated state as shown by  
13 the solid line in Figure 31, then no fluid would necessarily  
14 flow to the surface through fluid channel 7820. It could,  
15 but it is not necessary in this embodiment, and under the  
16 circumstances described.  
17

18 In a third preferred embodiment of the invention, and in  
19 analogy with the pump-down single zone packer apparatus 658  
20 described in Figure 17 in U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 B1, the  
21 expandable packer 7900 in Figure 31 is inflated so as to make  
22 a reasonable seal against the flowline 6782, but not so  
23 firmly so as to lock the device in place. In Figure 31, the  
24 solid line labeled with numeral 7900 shows the uninflated  
25 state of the expandable packer, and the dotted line shows the  
26 expanded, or inflated, state of expandable packer 7900.  
27 Then, in analogy with fluid flow described in Figure 17 of  
28 U.S. Patent No. 6,387,946 B1, fluid forced into the upper  
29 flowline in annular region 7726 will force the apparatus  
30 attached to the expandable packer downward into the wellbore,  
31 and any fluid  $\Delta V_3$  displaced is forced upward through fluid  
32 channel 7820 and into the interior of the EHCUC 7728 which in  
33 turn flows to the surface in analogy with previous  
34 description of fluid flow through coiled tubing to the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 surface in relation to Figure 17 in U.S. Patent 6,397,946.  
2 This of course assumes that valve 7832 is open.

3  
4 In principle, all first, second, and third methods of  
5 conveyance downhole can be used simultaneously, provided that  
6 valves 6980 and 7000 are set in their appropriate positions  
7 for the applications, provided that valve 7832 is set in its  
8 appropriate position, and provided the Progressive Cavity  
9 Pump 6800 is suitably energized.

10  
11 For simplicity, the particular embodiment of the  
12 invention shown in Figure 31 will be called in certain  
13 portions of the text that follows the "Electric Flowline  
14 Immersion Heater Assembly with Wireline Smart Shuttle"  
15 abbreviated "EFIHAWWSS" that is generally designated as  
16 numeral 7922 in Figure 31.

17  
18 Any smart completion device may be attached to the  
19 Retrieval Sub 7180 during any such conveyance downhole. For  
20 example, a casing saw or another packer can be installed on  
21 the Retrieval Sub so that many different services can be  
22 performed during one trip downhole. The casing saw and  
23 packers are described in U.S. Patent No. 6,397,946 B1. These  
24 include perforating, squeeze cementing, etc. - in fact many  
25 of the methods to complete oil and gas wells defined in  
26 the book entitled "Well Completion Methods", "Well Servicing  
27 and Workover", Lesson 4, from the series entitled "Lessons in  
28 Well Servicing and Workover", Petroleum Extension Service,  
29 The University of Texas at Austin, Austin, Texas, 1971, an  
30 entire copy of which is incorporated herein by reference.

31  
32 In another preferred embodiment of the invention, the  
33 apparatus in Figure 31 may be used to test production, or to  
34 assist production if it is used in another manner. In this

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 embodiment, an electrically actuated production flowline lock  
2 7940 (not shown in Figure 31) is attached to the Retrieval  
3 Sub 7180. It has passages through it so that hydrocarbons  
4 below it can pass through it if necessary, but it otherwise  
5 locks the apparatus in Figure 31 to the inside of the casing.  
6 Once locked in place, the PCP/ESM assembly can pump  
7 hydrocarbons through lower side port 7120 of the PCP and out  
8 of the upper side port 7140 of the PCP. Thereafter,  
9 hydrocarbons are pumped through fluid channel 7820 of the  
10 Tubing Termination Assembly 7780 in Figure 31 provided that  
11 the expandable packer 7900 is suitably inflated. There are  
12 many variations on this particular embodiment of the  
13 invention but they are not further described here solely in  
14 the interests of brevity. With this embodiment, and with the  
15 PCP forcing fluids up the inside of the EHCU, then this  
16 provides a method of artificial lift for the produced  
17 hydrocarbons.

18  
19 Figure 31 also shows the Retrieval Sub electrical  
20 connector 3130, the rotor 6810 of the Progressing Cavity  
21 Pump, and the stator 6820 of the Progressing Cavity Pump.  
22 The Retrieval Sub 7180 is attached to the body of the Smart  
23 Shuttle by quick change collar 7200 that in turn is connected  
24 to the lower body of the Progressive Cavity Pump.  
25 The lower wiper plug assembly 6920 has sealing lobe 6940 and  
26 this assembly is firmly attached to the body of the  
27 Progressive Cavity Pump at the location generally specified  
28 by numeral 6960 and this assembly further has lower bypass  
29 passage 6980 which has electrically operated valves 7000 and  
30 7020. In Figure 31, the Smart Shuttle is comprised of the  
31 Progressing Cavity Pump 6800 and the wiper plug assembly  
32 6920.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           Figure 31 may be used to illustrated yet other preferred  
2           embodiments of the invention. The region of the well below  
3           the lower wiper plug assembly 6920 is designated by element  
4           6802. The annular region of the well between the lower wiper  
5           plug assembly 6920 and the inflatable packer 7900 is  
6           designated by element 6804. The annular region of the well  
7           above the inflatable packer has already been designated by  
8           numeral 7726. In another preferred embodiment of the  
9           invention, the PCP may be used to pump fluids from region  
10          6802 to region 6804. In this embodiment, valve 7832 is  
11          closed and the inflatable packer 7900 is in its uninflated  
12          state that is shown by the solid line in Figure 31. In this  
13          embodiment, hydrocarbons produced from the well will be  
14          pumped to the surface through region 7726 of the well. In  
15          this case, the EHCU will heat the hydrocarbons to prevent any  
16          build up of wax, hydrates, or other blockage substances in  
17          the well. In yet another preferred embodiment of the  
18          invention, valve 7830 may also be left open, and in such case  
19          produced hydrocarbons would not only flow through region 7726  
20          to the surface but also within the EHCU 7728 to the surface.

21  
22           In **Figure 32**, all the elements have been described  
23          except elements 7723, 7725, 7764, 7842, 7862, 7924, 8000, and  
24          8010. In Figure 32, there is no wireline within the  
25          Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCU") 7725. In  
26          Figure 32, an Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly  
27          ("EFIHA") is generally shown as numeral 7723 having an  
28          Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCU") 7725 that is  
29          conveyed into steel flowline 6782. Tubing Termination  
30          Assembly 7780 has threads 7800 that mate to the threaded end  
31          7764 of EHCU 7725. Element 7924 in Figure 32 generally  
32          designates the Smart Shuttle Conveyed Electric Flowline  
33          Immersion Heater Assembly ("SSCEFIHA") disposed within the  
34          flowline 6782.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           The EHCU 7725 possesses electrical heater wires, power  
2 cables, any hydraulic tubes, fiber-optic cables, etc. within  
3 the wall thickness of the EHCU. The wall thickness of the  
4 EHCU is defined by the legend "WT(EHCU)", although that  
5 legend is not shown in Figure 32 for the purposes of  
6 simplicity. Assembly 8000 provides means to pass the heater  
7 wires, power cables, any hydraulic cables, fiber-optic  
8 cables, etc. from within the wall thickness of the EHCU to  
9 jumper 8010 that connects to connector 7842 that in turn  
10 mates to connector 7862.

11  
12           In Figure 32, the Smart Shuttle is comprised of the  
13 Progressing Cavity Pump 6800 and the wiper plug assembly  
14 6920. In one mode of operation of a preferred embodiment,  
15 fluid is pumped from the bottom side of the wiper plug  
16 assembly to the top side of the wiper plug assembly, and with  
17 expandable packer 7900 in the collapsed position shown in  
18 Figure 32, the Smart Shuttle will convey the Electric  
19 Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly ("EFIHA") 7723 down into  
20 flowline 6782 (provided valve 7832 is open, and valves 6980  
21 and 7000 are closed).

22  
23           **Figure 33** is similar to Figure 32, except here,  
24 expandable packer 7900, is in its extended position and makes  
25 contact with the interior wall of the flowline that is shown  
26 by the expanded solid line that is shaded. In this case,  
27 fluid pressure P provided to annular region 7726 by pumps  
28 located on the host (such as a floating platform), provide a  
29 net downward force on the assembly shown in Figure 33. There  
30 are several different modes of operation that amount to  
31 different preferred embodiments of the invention.

32  
33           In a first preferred embodiment, the Progressive Cavity  
34 Pump is turned on, valves 6980 and 7000 are closed, and valve

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
*Rig-3*

1 7832 is open. Here, the volume pumped by the Progressive  
2 Cavity Pump is  $\Delta V_2$  is equal to  $\Delta V_3$ . Further, the volume  
3 pumped  $\Delta V_3$  is equal to the fluid displaced in the flowline  
4 during the downward travel of the apparatus shown in  
5 Figure 33. Therefore, if any portion of the flowline is open  
6 to a reservoirs, or other source of fluid, below the  
7 apparatus shown in Figure 33 (in region 6802), no fluid will  
8 be forced into those reservoirs, or other sources of fluid  
9 due to the downward motion of that apparatus. In another  
10 embodiment of the invention, the volume pumped by the  
11 Progressive Cavity Pump  $\Delta V_2$  is always equal to, or greater  
12 than  $\Delta V_3$ . In yet another embodiment of the invention, the  
13 volume pumped by the Progressive Cavity Pump is  $\Delta V_2$  is  
14 substantially equal to  $\Delta V_3$ . Many other variants of this  
15 preferred embodiment are possible. This particular method of  
16 conveyance of coiled tubings into cased wellbores was  
17 substantially described on page 67, lines 53-67, and on  
18 page 68, lines 1-4, of U.S. Patent No. 6,387,946 B1.

19  
20 In a second preferred embodiment, the Progressive Cavity  
21 Pump is turned off, valves 6980, 7000, and 7832 are open, and  
22 the pressure P forces Electric Flowline Immersion Heater  
23 Assembly ("EFIHA") 7723 down into flowline 6782.

24  
25 **Figure 34** shows yet another preferred embodiment of the  
26 invention that shows an Electric Flowline Immersion Heater  
27 Assembly ("EFIHA") 7727 generally disposed in a flowline  
28 6782. Element 6806 shows the annular portion of the wellbore  
29 below the EFIHA, element 6808 shows the annular region of the  
30 well above the Retrieval Sub 7180 and below the inflatable  
31 packer 7900, and the region of the well above the inflatable  
32 packer 7726 has been previously defined. The other numerals  
33 have already been defined in Figure 34. Functionally, this  
34 is very similar to the "second preferred embodiment"

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 described in the previous paragraph. The Smart Shuttle in  
2 Figure 33 has been removed to make the apparatus in  
3 Figure 34. In this embodiment, valve 7832 is open, and the  
4 pressure P forces Electric Flowing Immersion Heater Assembly  
5 ("EFIHA") 7727 into the flowline. This installs the  
6 Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCUC") 7725 within  
7 flowline 6782.

8  
9 **Figure 35** shows cased well 1060 penetrating the sea  
10 bottom 1064 at location 1068. Steel cased well 1060 is  
11 attached to XMas Tree 1072 having control means 1076. The  
12 XMas Tree 1072 is attached to steel flowline 1080 that lies  
13 on the sea bottom until location 1084. At location 1084 the  
14 flowline begins its ascent to the upper portion of the  
15 flowline 1088, also known as a riser, that is connected to  
16 floating platform 1092.

17  
18 For the purposes of this invention, the term "Xmas  
19 Tree", "subsea wellhead", and "wellhead" may be used  
20 interchangeably.

21  
22 **Figure 35** shows an Electrically Heated Composite  
23 Umbilical ("EHCUC") 1096 being installed within the flowline  
24 1080 by tractor means 1100 having retractable traction wheels  
25 1104 and 1108, tractor body 1112, tractor locking mechanisms  
26 1116 and 1120, cablehead 1124 obtaining electrical power and  
27 control signals from wireline 1128 (which may also be an  
28 umbilical). The cablehead provides electrical power and  
29 control signals to the tractor body through connector 1132  
30 which in turn provides electrical power and control signals  
31 to run the electrical motors that energize the traction  
32 wheels. The floating platform floats in ocean 1136 having  
33 ocean surface 1140.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 In Figure 35, the EHCU is locked to the tractor means by  
2 the tractor locking mechanisms. The traction wheels of the  
3 tractor means drags the EHCU into the flowline. After the  
4 EHCU reaches a particular distance Z35 away from the XMas  
5 Tree, then the traction wheels are turned off. The legend  
6 Z35 is defined in Figure 35. Thereafter, the tractor locking  
7 mechanisms are released, and the traction wheels of the  
8 tractor means are retracted into the body of the tractor.  
9 The tractor means is then pulled out of the well by pulling  
10 on the wireline 1128. The EHCU is left installed in place  
11 within the flowline. Not shown in Figure 35 are locking  
12 mechanisms 1122 and 1123 on the EHCU which will lock it in  
13 place within the flowline during production operations.  
14 In one preferred embodiment, produced oil and gas flows  
15 through the interior of the EHCU 1141 to the surface. In  
16 another preferred embodiment, produced oil and gas flows  
17 through the region between the inside diameter of the  
18 flowline and the outside diameter of the EHCU that is  
19 region 1142 in Figure 35. In yet another embodiment, the  
20 production can flow through both regions 1141 and 1142.

21  
22 In Figure 36, steel cased well 1144 is located within a  
23 geological formation 1148 that penetrates the sea bottom 1152  
24 at location 1156. Steel cased well terminates in XMas Tree  
25 1160 having control means 1164. Steel flowline 1168 is  
26 attached to the XMas Tree and rests on the bottom of the  
27 sea until location 1172 at which point it raises towards  
28 the upper end of the flowline, which is riser 1174, that  
29 is connected to Floating Production, Storage and Offloading  
30 (FPSO) ship 1176.

31  
32 The Pump-Down Conveyed Flowline Immersion Heater  
33 Assembly ("PDCFIHA") is generally shown as element 1180 in  
34 Figure 36. A portion of this apparatus includes an

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical ("EHCU") 1184.  
2 Hydraulic pressure P in the annular space between the inside  
3 diameter of the flowline and the outside diameter of the  
4 EHCU, which space is designated by numeral 1188 in Figure 36,  
5 applies a force F to the hydraulic seals 1192 attached to the  
6 PDCFIHA. Three seals are shown in Figure 36 which are  
7 collectively labeled as element 1192 in Figure 36. The  
8 hydraulic pressure P is used to carry the PDCFIHA into place  
9 a distance Z36 away from the XMas Tree. The legend Z36 is  
10 defined in Figure 36.

11  
12 If the control means 1164 has closed a valve connecting  
13 the flowline to the XMas Tree, then the displaced fluid from  
14 annular region 1196 must go somewhere. A downhole pump motor  
15 assembly is generally shown as element 1200 in Figure 36  
16 which is very similar to that shown in Figure 8 herein. So,  
17 the detailed elements of the downhole pump motor assembly  
18 will not be labeled in the interests of simplicity. However,  
19 this downhole pump motor assembly possesses hydraulic pump  
20 1204 that energized by electrical motors 1208 and 1212.  
21 Crude production flows into orifice 1214 of the hydraulic  
22 pump, and exits from the orifices collectively identified  
23 with numeral 1216 in Figure 36. This exiting fluid is  
24 trapped within pump shroud 1220 that is attached to the EHCU  
25 at location 1224. Electrical power and control signals are  
26 provided by internal conductors and/or fiber optic cables  
27 within the walls of the EHCU, are broken out of the wall of  
28 the EHCU by apparatus 1228 that provides power and control  
29 signals to the downhole pump motor assembly by jumper 1232.  
30 The fluid then flows through the pump shroud and then through  
31 the EHCU towards the upper portion of the EHCU 1236 that is  
32 connected to the FPSO ship. If the volume produced by the  
33 hydraulic pump "V35P" exceeds the volume "V35D" displaced by  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3



1 the downward movement of the PDCFIHA, then the PDCFIHA can  
2 proceed into the well.

3  
4 Even if the control means 1164 allowed the valve from  
5 the flowline to the cased well to remain open (said valve is  
6 not shown in Figure 36 for simplicity), as long as V35P  
7 exceeds the volume V25D, then no fluid will flow back into  
8 the steel cased well. FPSO ship is located in ocean 1240  
9 having ocean surface 1244.

10  
11 **Figure 37** is very similar to Figure 36, except here  
12 the host is floating platform 1248. All the other numerals  
13 in Figure 37 have already been otherwise identified and  
14 described in Figure 36.

15  
16 In **Figure 37A**, all the numerals have been defined except  
17 those described in the following within this paragraph.  
18 Locks 1221 and 1222 serve to lock the "PDCFIHA" into place  
19 after it has been pumped down into the well. In one  
20 preferred embodiment, cross-over valve 1249 allows fluid  
21 flowing in region 1250 between the downhole pump motor  
22 assembly 1200 and the pump shroud 1220 to be directed into  
23 annular region 1188. Then production would flow through  
24 annular region 1188 to the surface. In yet another  
25 embodiment of the invention, the cross-over valve 1249 would  
26 allow fluid to not only flow through annular region 1128 to  
27 the surface but fluid would also be allowed to flow in the  
28 inside of the EHCU 1251 in that portion of the EHCU that is  
29 between the floating platform and cross-over valve 1249.  
30 In yet another embodiment, the cross-over valve 1249 may be  
31 chosen to direct production to region 1251 only; to region  
32 1184 only; and to regions 1251 and 1184 simultaneously.  
33 After the locks 1221 and 1222 are deployed, the hydraulic  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 pump 1204 may be used to assist well production by providing  
2 artificial lift.

3  
4 In **Figure 38**, all the elements having numerals less than  
5 280 have been described in relation to Figure 9 herein.  
6 However, casing 274 in Figure 38 may also include other forms  
7 of tubulars, including tubing. Open hole completion 1252 in  
8 a reservoir with heavy oil 1256 causes heavy oil 1260 to flow  
9 through expanded screen 1262 into the open hole 1264. Heavy  
10 oil flows into the inflow assembly 1268, thorough intake  
11 orifice 1272, into hydraulic pump 1276, and out exhaust  
12 orifices that are collectively labeled with 1280 in  
13 Figure 38. Electric motors 1284 and 1288 provide the power  
14 to drive the hydraulic pump. After the heavy oil emerges  
15 from the exhaust orifices, it is trapped by shroud 1292 that  
16 is connected to Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical  
17 ("EHCU") 1296. The annular region inside the shroud open to  
18 fluid flow is defined by numeral 1294. The heated production  
19 proceeds through the inside of EHCU 1298 towards the top of  
20 the EHCU 1300 attached to platform 258. Electrical power and  
21 control signals are provided to the electric motors by  
22 electrical conductors and by fiber optic fibers within the  
23 wall thickness of the EHCU. The hydraulic pump provides  
24 artificial lift to the heavy oil produced.

25  
26 The Electric Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly  
27 ("EFIHA") is generally designated with element 1304 in  
28 Figure 38 which includes the Electrical Heated Composite  
29 Umbilical 1296. In this case, hydraulic pressure P applied  
30 at the platform in the annular region between the outside  
31 diameter of the EHCU and the inside diameter of the casing  
32 274, which is region 1308, provides a force on seals 1312  
33 that forces the EFIHA down into the well. Guides 1316 help  
34 centralize the EFIHA. As the EFIHA is forced downhole, a

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 certain displaced fluid volume V38D could be forced back into  
2 formation which could damage the formation. However, if the  
3 hydraulic pump forces a volume V38P into the EHCU, then  
4 provided that V38P is greater than V38D at all times, then no  
5 fluid is forced back into the open hole. This is important  
6 to prevent formation damage from "back flow".  
7

8 In one of the preferred embodiments above, fluid flow  
9 from the open hole 1264 is caused to flow through region 1294  
10 and then through the interior of the EHCU 1290 to the  
11 surface. As described above, a cross-over valve can be  
12 installed that will allow production to flow instead through  
13 region 1308 to the surface. And yet another embodiment would  
14 allow production to flow through both regions 1298 and 1308  
15 to the surface.  
16

17 The EHCU provides heat to reduce the viscosity of the  
18 heavy oil produced from the open hole. Therefore, the  
19 artificial lift provided by the hydraulic pump is used  
20 efficiently to produce heavy oil.  
21

22 **Figure 39** shows an exploratory well with large volume  
23 fluid sampling capability. Figure 39 shows a floating  
24 platform 1320 with a small separator with fluid storage 1324  
25 in ocean 1328 having ocean surface 1330. Marine blowout  
26 preventer ("BOP") 1332 is shown on ocean bottom 1336 at  
27 location 1340. Borehole 1344 penetrates a first geological  
28 formation 1348, a second geological formation 1352, and a  
29 third geological formation 1356 in earth 1360. Casing 1364  
30 penetrates the BOP and lines the borehole down to location  
31 1368. Perforations 1370 were made into producing intervals  
32 in the first geological formation 1348. Downhole sampling  
33 unit shown as element 1372 in Figure 39 possesses an open  
34 hole packer, with a sand screen filter, and a pump. The pump

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 is used to pump samples up insulated and heated coiled tubing  
2 1376 through the casing to the small separator with fluid  
3 storage 1324 on the floating platform. Perforations 1380  
4 were made into intervals to be tested in second geological  
5 formation 1352. In a preferred embodiment, electrical power  
6 to operate the pump is obtained from electrical wires that  
7 are in the wall thickness of an umbilical as described  
8 earlier. On another preferred embodiment the heated tubing  
9 is comprised of an Electrical Heated Composite Umbilical  
10 (EHCU) as previously described above.

11  
12 In relation to Figure 39, heated coiled tubing that is  
13 pumped will allow large reservoir fluid samples to be  
14 collected without the expense of a downhole completion. In  
15 an emergency, the coiled tubing is cut at the marine BOP and  
16 the downhole pump shuts in the coiled tube to prevent a  
17 blowout path. Applications include areas with soft sandstone  
18 and areas where larger fluid volumes are required to  
19 determine the reservoir production fluid properties.

20  
21 **Figure 40** shows an apparatus that provides power to  
22 upstream functions. In preferred embodiments, this would  
23 apply to subsea systems that are external to a flowline.  
24 In Figure 40, flowline 1384 is in the vicinity of a subsea  
25 installation 1388 that requires electrical power. Composite  
26 umbilical 1392 is attached to first assembly 1396. Composite  
27 umbilical 1392 possesses electrical wires within its wall  
28 thickness that are broken out by assembly 1400 that is  
29 connected to jumper 1404. The electrical power is used to  
30 energize electric motor 1408 that is used to energize  
31 Progressing Cavity Pump 1412. As has been described in  
32 relation to other embodiments above, pressure provided by an  
33 external source in the annular region between the outside  
34 diameter of the composite umbilical and the inside diameter

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 of the flowline acting on hydraulic seal 1416 forces the  
2 entire apparatus collectively called the "Connector  
3 Apparatus" 1420 into the flowline. The annular region  
4 between the outside diameter of the composite umbilical and  
5 the inside diameter of the flowline is defined as element  
6 1386 in Figure 40. As previously described, the Progressing  
7 Cavity Pump, in conjunction with seals 1424, is used to pump  
8 displaced fluid through channel 1428 into the interior of the  
9 composite umbilical 1432 for return to the surface. Landing  
10 and locating shoulder 1436 is used to provide electrical  
11 power to the flowline penetrating connector 1440. Subsea  
12 power cable 1444 is attached to the flowline penetrating  
13 connector 1440. The flowline penetrating connector 1440 is  
14 placed into its proper position 1448 by an ROV. In various  
15 different embodiments, the flowline is penetrated for  
16 electrical, chemical and hydraulic power. This approach  
17 minimizes umbilical costs to small installations.

18  
19 **Figure 41**, all the elements through element 506 have  
20 been defined previously. In addition, two of the  
21 electrically insulated wires 1452 and 1456 are used to  
22 uniformly electrically heat composite umbilical 1460 in  
23 Figure 41.

24  
25 **Figure 42** shows one embodiment of a first resistor  
26 network used to electrically heat composite umbilicals.  
27 Here, wires 1452 and 1456 have uniform resistance per unit  
28 length. The total resistance of each one of these  
29 electrically insulated wires is  $R(42)$  in ohms. These wires  
30 are connected together at the lower end of the composite  
31 umbilical shown by electrical jumper 1464. The total length  
32 of each wire in the composite umbilical is  $L(42)$ , a legend  
33 that is defined on Figure 42. The legend  $V(42)$  in Figure 42  
34 shows the voltage  $V(42)$  applied uphole to the resistive

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 network. This first resistive network will result in uniform  
2 heating of the electrically heated composite umbilical.

3  
4 In **Figure 43**, all the elements through elements 506 have  
5 been define previously. In addition, two of the electrically  
6 insulated wires 1468 and 1472 are used to nonuniformly heat  
7 composite umbilical 1476.

8  
9 **Figure 44** shows an embodiment of a second resistor  
10 network used to nonuniformly electrically heat composite  
11 umbilicals. Here, wire 1468 does not have a uniform  
12 resistance per unit length. In Figure 44, wire 1472 has  
13 uniform resistance per unit length (but in other embodiments,  
14 this need not be the case). Wires 1468 and 1472 are  
15 connected together at the lower end of the composite  
16 umbilical by a short electrical jumper 1480 having negligible  
17 electrical resistance. The length of the electrically heated  
18 composite umbilical is  $L(44)$  and that legend is defined in  
19 Figure 44. Wire 1472 has a uniform resistance per unit  
20 length, and has a total resistance in ohms of  $R(44D)$ , a  
21 legend that is defined in Figure 44. Wire 1468 has a  
22 resistance in ohms of  $R(44A)$  during a first length  $L(44)/3$ ;  
23 has a resistance in ohms of  $R(44B)$  during a second length  
24  $L(44)/3$ ; and has a resistance in ohms of  $R(44C)$  during a  
25 third length of  $L(44)/3$ . The legends  $R(44A)$ ,  $R(44B)$ , and  
26  $R(44C)$  are defined in Figure 44. Many ways may be used to  
27 fabricate wire 1468, including suitably joining together  
28 different sections of different wires having different  
29 resistances per unit length, but otherwise having the same  
30 outside diameters of insulation. The legend  $V(44)$  in  
31 Figure 44 shows the voltage  $V(44)$  applied uphole to the  
32 resistor network. The total resistive load is the sum of  
33  $R(44A)$ ,  $R(44B)$ ,  $R(44C)$ , and  $R(44D)$ . If  $R(44C)$  is greater  
34 than  $R(44B)$ ; and if  $R(44B)$  is greater than  $R(44A)$ ; and if

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
*Rig-3*

1 R(44A) is greater than R(44D); then the electrically heated  
2 composite umbilical will preferentially apply more electrical  
3 heat to the lower (right-hand side) of the umbilical in  
4 Figure 44. This nonuniform electrical heating has many  
5 advantages including the application of heat in poorly  
6 insulated areas of an umbilical or coiled tubing; the  
7 matching of required heat to the transportation process of  
8 hydrocarbons within the umbilical or coiled tubing to  
9 avoid the build up of waxes and hydrates such as the  
10 preferential heating of areas where high J-T cooling may  
11 exist; etc.  
12

13 **Figure 45** shows another preferred embodiment of the  
14 electrically heated umbilical that is labeled with numeral  
15 1484 that is an armored electric cable umbilical. Steel or  
16 synthetic armor 1488 surrounds filler 1492 that encapsulates  
17 electrical wires 1496 surrounded by electrical insulation  
18 1500. This preferred embodiment can include certain types of  
19 logging cables. The wires may be individual wires, pairs,  
20 bundles, etc. The cable may have some wires dedicated to  
21 communication, some for power and fiber optic fibers (not  
22 shown in Figure 45) for communication and sensor service.  
23 For heating the production (besides losses due to routine  
24 power transmission losses) circuits may be dedicated to  
25 heating applications as described earlier. Sections of the  
26 circuits may be designed for heating, thus the heat can be  
27 directed to specific locations along the umbilical length as  
28 described in other embodiments above.  
29

30 **Figure 46** shows another preferred embodiment of the  
31 electrically heated umbilical generally designated as element  
32 1504. The umbilical is surrounded by steel coiled tubing  
33 1508 having any desirable outside diameter and having any  
34 desirable wall thickness. Electric cable 1512 provides

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 electrical power for devices, provides communication service,  
2 and provides electrical power for electrical heating of  
3 fluids within region 1516 of the coiled tubing which may be  
4 retrofitted into the steel coiled tubing to be replaced or  
5 repaired. To replace cable 1512 after the steel tubing was  
6 installed into a flowline, it may be pulled out of the steel  
7 tubing leaving the steel tubing within the flowline. Then a  
8 hydraulic seal between the outside diameter of the cable and  
9 the inside diameter of the steel coiled tubing allows  
10 hydraulic pressure introduced into that annular area to be  
11 used to force down the cable into the steel coiled tubing.  
12 The outside diameter of electric cable is dependent upon the  
13 application for which it is chosen. In one preferred  
14 embodiment, hot fluid is circulated down region 1516 and the  
15 umbilical is used as an immersion heater. In another  
16 preferred embodiment, electric current goes down the electric  
17 cable and is conducted back up the coiled tubing that  
18 provides immersion heating. In yet another embodiment, all  
19 the heating comes from the power dissipated within electrical  
20 circuits within the electric cable. In yet other preferred  
21 embodiments, cable 1512 may also contain fiber optic cables,  
22 hydraulic tubes, etc. for other applications.

23  
24 **Figure 47** shows yet another embodiment of the  
25 electrically heated umbilical 1520 that is similar to that  
26 shown in Figure 46, except here an extra thermal insulation  
27 layer 1524 is bonded to the outside of the steel coiled  
28 tubing. Umbilical 1520 is a thermally insulated umbilical  
29 with an electric cable. Here, the electric cable includes  
30 wires for heating the pipe, wires for control and power of a  
31 downhole electric pump, and fiber optic cables for measuring  
32 distributed temperature.

33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1           **Figure 48** shows yet another embodiment of the  
2       eclectically heated umbilical 1528 that is called a bundled  
3       umbilical. Outer wear sheath 1532 surrounds filler or  
4       potting material 1536 which surrounds one or more electric  
5       cables 1540. Each such electric cable provides functions  
6       described in the previous paragraph. In addition, the  
7       potting material surrounds one or more tubes 1544 having  
8       channels 1548. The tubes may carry any fluid or chemical to  
9       the end of the umbilicals. For example, these fluids may  
10      include an emulsion breaker that is injected just upstream of  
11      a pump. The electric cables provide power and communication,  
12      and may provide distributed electrical heating. The filler  
13      binds the umbilical together and provides for control of the  
14      buoyancy of the umbilical.

15  
16           Figures 28 and 29 show existing flowlines installed in a  
17      producing oil field. Any of the Electric Flowline Immersion  
18      Heater Assemblies shown in Figures 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36,  
19      37, and 37A may be retrofitted into existing flowlines. The  
20      Electric Flowline Immersion Assemblies shown in these figures  
21      are different embodiments of "electric flowline immersion  
22      assembly means". Therefore, the "Electric Flowline Immersion  
23      Heater Assembly" ("EFIHA"), the "Electric Flowline Immersion  
24      Heater Assembly with Wireline Smart Shuttle" ("EFIHAWWSS"),  
25      the "Smart Shuttle Conveyed Electric Flowline Immersion  
26      Heater Assembly" ("SSCEFIHA"), and the "Pump-Down Conveyed  
27      Flowline Immersion Heater Assembly" ("PDCFIHA"), are all  
28      different embodiments of "electric flowline immersion  
29      assembly means".

30  
31           In accordance with the preferred embodiments herein, any  
32      of the Electrically Heated Composite Umbilicals shown in  
33      Figures 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, and 37A may be  
34      retrofitted into existing flowlines which are different

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1       embodiments of "electrically heated composite umbilical  
2       means" which are used to make "immersion heater means".  
3       In accordance with the preferred embodiments herein, the  
4       additional types of electrically heated umbilical immersion  
5       heaters shown in Figures 41, 43, 45, 46, 47, and 48 may be  
6       suitable retrofitted into existing flowlines and they are  
7       different preferred embodiments of "electrically heated  
8       umbilical means" that are used to make "immersion heater  
9       means".

10  
11           Any of the umbilical conveyance means shown in  
12       Figures 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, and 37A may be used  
13       to install any of the "electrically heated umbilical means"  
14       or the "electrically heated composite umbilical means" into a  
15       flowline to make "immersion heater means". As described in  
16       the preferred embodiments, these are installed with different  
17       embodiments of "electric flowline immersion assembly means"  
18       which provide different means to install, or remove, the  
19       electric flowline immersion assembly means from the well.  
20       Any means that is used to convey into a flowline, or remove  
21       from a flowline, any "electrically heated umbilical means"  
22       shall be defined herein as a "conveyance means to install an  
23       electrically heated umbilical means in a flowline". Any  
24       means that is used to convey into a flowline, or remove from  
25       a flowline, any "electrically heated composite umbilical  
26       means" shall be defined for the purposes herein as a  
27       "conveyance means to install an electrically heated composite  
28       umbilical means".

29  
30           It is important to be able to retrofit such electrically  
31       heated immersion heater systems into existing flowlines for  
32       many reasons that includes the following:

33           (a) to introduce an immersion heater system into an  
34       existing flowline that was not expected to have wax or

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 hydrate build-up problems;

2 (b) to have repair alternatives for previously  
3 installed, but failed, permanent heating systems; and

4 (c) to have operating flexibility to adapt the  
5 production system to different production characteristics  
6 from original expectations.

7  
8 Electrically heated immersion heater systems can be  
9 installed to prevent waxes and hydrates from forming.  
10 Hydrates are a solid ice-like materials typically composed of  
11 water and low molecular weight gases such as methane.  
12 Hydrates form in high-pressure, low temperature, environments  
13 such as those found in subsea production systems. Hydrates  
14 may easily plug production systems, especially during  
15 transient operating conditions if not properly managed.

16  
17 In many of the preferred embodiments, a pump is  
18 installed in the flowline and may be used in combination with  
19 the electrically heated immersion heater system, which has  
20 many advantages, including the following:

21 (a) such methods and apparatus increases the production  
22 recovery rate helping the field's net present value ("NPV");  
23 and

24 (b) such methods and apparatus increases the total  
25 recoverable reserves from the reservoir by reducing the  
26 backpressure on the reservoir.

27  
28 The installation of an electrically heated immersion  
29 heater system in a flowline heats up any produced heavy oils  
30 which reduces the viscosity of the produced heavy oils, which  
31 has many advantages, including the following:

32 (a) such methods and apparatus reduces the pumping  
33 energy required to transport produced hydrocarbons through  
34 the flowline which therefore reduces the costs of producing

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 the hydrocarbons;

2 (b) such methods and apparatus makes some presently  
3 non-commercial fields economic to develop; and

4 (c) such methods and apparatus allows for the efficient  
5 subsea transportation of typical gelling crude oils.  
6

7 In many of the preferred embodiments described,  
8 nonuniform heating may be applied to the flowline(s) by the  
9 electrically heated immersion heater system which provides  
10 many advantages, including being able to configure the  
11 production facility to better match and manage the thermal  
12 requirements for heating of the flowline(s) to avoid build up  
13 of waxes and hydrates, and to reduce the cost of producing  
14 hydrocarbons from the reservoir.  
15

16 Other preferred embodiments provide for the dynamic  
17 reconfiguring of the heat supplied by an electrically heated  
18 umbilical after the umbilical is installed into a flowline.  
19 As an example of such a preferred embodiment, the value of  
20 R(44C) in Figure 44 can be selectable, and controlled from a  
21 surface computer. There are a variety of means for doing so,  
22 including computer controlled switches in the wall of an  
23 Electrically Heated Composite Umbilical that can be used to  
24 switch in, or out, certain resistor circuits.  
25

26 Yet other preferred embodiments provide for the dynamic  
27 reconfiguring the buoyancy of an electrical heated umbilical.  
28 For example, computer controlled valves may distribute  
29 different densities of fluids within one or more fluid  
30 channels located within the wall of an Electrically Heated  
31 Composite Umbilical. Such systems are described in detail in  
32 Provisional Patent Application Number 60/432,045, filed on  
33 December 8, 2002, and in U.S. Disclosure Document  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 No. 531,687 filed May 18, 2003, entire copies of which are  
2 incorporated herein by reference.

3  
4 In many of the preferred embodiments described, the  
5 electrically heated immersion heater system may be removed  
6 from the well, repaired, and retrofitted in the flowline  
7 without removing the flowline which provides many advantages,  
8 including the following:

9 (a) such methods and apparatus saves significant  
10 operating costs by performing both the heater and artificial  
11 lift pump service from the host facility without having to  
12 mobilize a subsea intervention vessel; and

13 (b) such methods and apparatus allows for the use of  
14 conventional electric submersible pumps for critical subsea  
15 "tie-back services" to the host.

16  
17 The term "tie-back service" has been used above.  
18 Satellite production wells are frequently used to develop  
19 small fields surrounding an existing facility to which they  
20 are connected, and from which they are controlled. These  
21 satellite wells provide tie-back service to the host  
22 production facility.

23  
24 In view of the above disclosure, a preferred embodiment  
25 of the invention is an apparatus comprising an electrically  
26 heated composite umbilical means installed within a subsea  
27 flowline containing produced hydrocarbons as an immersion  
28 heater means to prevent waxes and hydrates from forming  
29 within the flowline and blocking the flowline, whereby the  
30 electrically heated composite umbilical means possesses at  
31 least one electrical conductor disposed within the composite  
32 umbilical means that conducts electrical current that is used  
33 to heat the electrically heated composite umbilical means  
34 within the subsea flowline.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 In view of the above disclosure, a preferred embodiment  
2 of the invention is a method of installing an electrically  
3 heated composite umbilical means within a previously existing  
4 subsea flowline containing produced hydrocarbons to make an  
5 immersion heater means to prevent waxes and hydrates from  
6 forming within the flowline and blocking the flowline.

7  
8 In view of the above disclosure, a preferred embodiment  
9 of the invention is a method of using an umbilical conveyance  
10 means to convey into an existing subsea flowline possessing  
11 produced hydrocarbons an electrically heated composite  
12 umbilical means used as an immersion heating means to prevent  
13 waxes and hydrates from forming within the flowline and  
14 blocking the flowline.

15  
16 In view of the disclosure above, a preferred embodiment  
17 of the invention is a method of using an umbilical conveyance  
18 means to convey into an existing subsea flowline containing  
19 produced hydrocarbons an electrically heated umbilical means  
20 used as an immersion heating means to prevent waxes and  
21 hydrates from forming within the flowline and blocking  
22 the flowline.

23  
24 In view of the above, a preferred embodiment of the  
25 invention is a method of providing artificial lift to  
26 produced hydrocarbons within a subsea flowline comprising at  
27 least the steps of:

28 (a) attaching a progressing cavity pump to an electric  
29 motor to make an electrically energized pump;

30 (b) attaching the electrically energized pump to  
31 to a first end of a tubular composite umbilical possessing a  
32 multiplicity of electrical conductors within the wall of the  
33 tubular composite umbilical;

34 (c) conveying into the flowline the electrically

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 energized pump attached to the first end of the composite  
2 tubular umbilical;

3 (d) using first and second of a multiplicity of  
4 electrical conductors to electrically heat the composite  
5 umbilical to prevent waxes and hydrates from blocking the  
6 flow of the produced hydrocarbons within the flowline; and

7 (e) using at least third and fourth electrical  
8 conductors of the multiplicity of electrical conductors to  
9 provide electrical energy to the electrically energized pump,  
10 whereby the progressing cavity pump provides artificial lift  
11 to the produced hydrocarbons within the subsea flowline.  
12

13 In view of the above, a preferred embodiment of the  
14 invention is a method of providing artificial lift to  
15 produced hydrocarbons within a subsea flowline comprising at  
16 least the steps of:

17 (a) attaching a hydraulic pump to an electric motor to  
18 make an electrically energized pump;

19 (b) attaching the electrically energized pump to  
20 to a first end of a tubular composite umbilical possessing a  
21 multiplicity of electrical conductors within the wall of the  
22 tubular composite umbilical;

23 (c) conveying into the flowline the electrically  
24 energized pump attached to the first end of the composite  
25 tubular umbilical;

26 (d) using first and second of the multiplicity of  
27 electrical conductors to electrically heat the composite  
28 umbilical to prevent waxes and hydrates from blocking the  
29 flow of the produced hydrocarbons within the flowline; and

30 (e) using at least third and fourth electrical  
31 conductors of the multiplicity of electrical conductors to  
32 provide electrical energy to the electrically energized pump,  
33 whereby the electrically energized pump provides artificial  
34 lift to the produced hydrocarbons within the subsea flowline.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention, an  
2       electrical heated composite umbilical means dissipating in  
3       excess of 60 kilowatts of electrical energy to heat produced  
4       hydrocarbons is installed within a flowline to prevent the  
5       formation of waxes and hydrates and blockage of the flowline.  
6

7           In another preferred embodiment of the invention, an  
8       electrical heated umbilical means dissipating in excess of 60  
9       kilowatts of electrical energy to heat produced hydrocarbons  
10      is installed within a flowline to prevent the formation of  
11      waxes and hydrates and blockage of the flowline.  
12

13          In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention,  
14      electrically heated composite umbilicals are approximately  
15      neutrally buoyant within the fluids present within the  
16      flowlines to reduce the frictional drag on the neutrally  
17      buoyant umbilicals when they are installed into the  
18      flowlines.  
19

20          Still further, in yet another preferred embodiment of  
21      the invention, electrically heated umbilicals are  
22      approximately neutrally buoyant within the fluids present  
23      within the flowlines to reduce the frictional drag on the  
24      neutrally buoyant umbilicals when they are installed into  
25      the flowlines.  
26

27          In another preferred embodiment of the invention, fluid  
28      filled electrically heated composite umbilicals are  
29      approximately neutrally buoyant within the fluids present  
30      within the flowlines to reduce the frictional drag on the  
31      neutrally buoyant umbilicals when they are installed into  
32      the flowlines.  
33  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1           In yet another preferred embodiment of the invention,  
2   fluid filled electrically heated umbilicals are approximately  
3   neutrally buoyant within the fluids present within the  
4   flowlines to reduce the frictional drag on the neutrally  
5   buoyant umbilicals when they are installed into the  
6   flowlines.

7  
8           In another preferred embodiment of the invention is  
9   using the methods and apparatus to drill and complete  
10   boreholes for infrastructure purposes such as for water,  
11   sewer, electric power, and communications facilities in  
12   metropolitan areas, and for subterranean pipelines in other  
13   suitable locations.

14  
15           Offshore flowlines and pipelines are typically  
16   constructed of steel and may be insulated to minimize  
17   internal product heat losses. These pipelines are designed  
18   to lie on the ocean floor with a sufficient weight to remain  
19   stable in the subsea environment. Typically, this involves  
20   a submerged weight that is greater than 2 lbs per foot of  
21   pipe length in sea water. However, long term material  
22   fatigue problems may develop if this pipe spans different  
23   varieties of subsea terrain features. The unsupported pipe  
24   span may respond with vortex induced motion ("VIM") if the  
25   ocean current flow is sufficiently strong and the length of  
26   span has a natural frequency that is excited by the VIM  
27   caused by the current flow. Significant costs are incurred  
28   engineering VIM solutions to remediate spans when encountered  
29   in pipelines which have already been installed.

30  
31           Most offshore pipelines have historically been located  
32   on top of the continental shelf where the terrain features  
33   are gentle and resemble coastal plains. Now, pipelines are  
34   being extended onto the continental slope where the subsea

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 terrain more closely resembles rugged hill country. There  
2 are slot canyons, and escarpments, that are significant  
3 pipeline routing problems (to avoid unreasonably long spans).  
4 Most routing solutions are expensive to resolve for  
5 traditional steel pipelines. An alternative approach is  
6 needed that does not have these inherent problems.

7  
8 Steel flowlines and pipelines are routinely one time  
9 installations. That is, a pipeline is rarely, or never,  
10 relocated due to the high recovery and relocation cost. It  
11 is less expensive to install a completely new pipeline than  
12 to relocate an existing line. A major factor in this  
13 economic scenario is the large and expensive vessels required  
14 to install the pipelines. It is not unusual for these large  
15 vessels to lease for more than \$300,000 per day and to have a  
16 substantial mobilization cost. An offshore development may  
17 easily have pipeline and flowline installation costs  
18 which represent as much as 30% to 35% of the entire field  
19 development capital expense. These substantial large vessels  
20 are required to assemble, and weld, the steel pipe into a  
21 pipeline and safely lower this pipeline to lie on the ocean  
22 floor.

23  
24 A preferred embodiment of the invention provides an  
25 alternative approach. In this preferred embodiment, a  
26 pipeline is constructed of a light-weight, strong, material  
27 so that the pipeline is buoyant, especially in deepwater  
28 where there would be no pipeline conflict with fishing  
29 interests. This buoyant pipe would be anchored to the ocean  
30 floor at strategic points along the desired route. The  
31 floating pipe would assume an arching configuration between  
32 the anchor points. The shape of the buoyant arch would be  
33 controlled by the axial tension in the pipeline itself. Any  
34 ocean currents would deflect and deform the arch in the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 direction of the ocean currents. A specific advantage of  
2 this configuration is that the pipeline can arch over  
3 significant seafloor terrain features like escarpments or  
4 slot canyons.

5  
6 Carefully selecting the buoyant pipe materials and  
7 insulation (while considering the range of internal products  
8 to be transported), allows the pipe to be designed to  
9 minimize VIM. On one preferred embodiment, the pipe and its  
10 contents to have a specific gravity between 0.6 and 0.9 when  
11 submerged in sea water (and is therefore, "positively"  
12 buoyant). Further, by selecting a light weight composite  
13 material, the necessary strength may be obtained, with good  
14 fatigue resistant properties, to resist the almost continuous  
15 flexing motion the pipe material will experience in service.  
16 Composite tubular products with mechanical properties that  
17 begin to approach those required for this application are  
18 currently being developed by companies like ABB Vetco Gray,  
19 Hydril, Wellstream, Fiberspar and others (in Europe),  
20 although the application of these materials to the preferred  
21 embodiments herein is a new invention as provided herein.  
22 Today, some of these manufacturers are using their composite  
23 products as shallow water flowlines. They increase the  
24 weight of the composite pipe and its internal product so that  
25 the pipe lays on the ocean floor as a one-to-one replacement  
26 for steel pipe. The novel application of using positively  
27 buoyant pipelines, and neutrally buoyant pipelines, is  
28 technically different as described in the several preferred  
29 embodiments herein.

30  
31 One preferred embodiment provides a new method of  
32 installation that uses the support of two or three relatively  
33 inexpensive anchor handling boats (a monohull vessel that may  
34 also include tugs, supply boats, etc.). The following method

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 of installation is one several preferred embodiments that may  
2 be used to install, and commission, a buoyant, or  
3 substantially neutrally buoyant, pipeline.  
4

5 Step 1. Survey the pipeline route and select pipeline  
6 anchoring points. These are envisioned to be about 1  
7 kilometer apart along the route. The actual distance is not  
8 critical, and spacing would be adjusted to conform to terrain  
9 features. For example one anchor point could be near the  
10 base of an escarpment, and the other on top of the  
11 escarpment, so the buoyant pipe would arch over the seafloor.  
12

13 Step 2. Mobilize anchor handling vessels and install  
14 the anchor systems at the selected locations. These anchors  
15 are envisioned to be suction anchors, but any anchor capable  
16 of resisting up-lift would be feasible to use. See the  
17 publication by H. Dendani referenced below for further  
18 discussion of suction anchors and their proper design. Aker  
19 Maritime has recently installed these anchors using only an  
20 anchor handling vessel and an ROV. Each anchor is left with  
21 a marker and a pendant to make relocation easy. Survey the  
22 anchor sites for their installed geometric locations.  
23

24 Step 3. At the pipeline shore base mobilization point,  
25 anchor clamps are installed on the pipe at the appropriate  
26 locations. These clamps feature integral strain relief  
27 devices to prevent pipeline damage at these points of pipe  
28 inflection. In one preferred embodiment, at each anchor  
29 point the pipe will be bent and the strain relief device  
30 prevents over-stress in the pipeline in this area. These  
31 clamps will be secured to the pendants rising from each of  
32 the anchors during the installation process. The clamps will  
33 be designed such that they may be installed underwater by an  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 ROV, or repositioned along the pipe itself if needed to  
2 relocate a clamp.

3  
4 Step 4. The flexible pipeline may either be transported  
5 to site spooled on a vessel or it may be towed in the water.  
6 For the purpose of this description, it is assumed that the  
7 pipeline is towed to location from a shore based mobilization  
8 point. The pipeline is buoyant and fatigue resistant so a  
9 surface tow is practical. As with other buoyant towed  
10 installations, there will be a lead towing vessel, a  
11 following "drag" vessel, and one or two intermediate vessels  
12 alongside the floating pipeline. These vessels help maneuver  
13 the pipeline and guard the pipeline to keep other vessels  
14 from running across and damaging the towed pipeline.

15  
16 Step 5. On the installation site, a draw-down  
17 installation technique is utilized. A (synthetic) line is  
18 rigged by the ROV between a surface (traction) winch, a  
19 sheave on the end anchor and the buoyant pipe clamp. This  
20 pull-down line then draws the pipeline to the ocean floor by  
21 pulling with the winch. The ROV then connects the anchor  
22 pendent line to the appropriate anchor clamp. Meanwhile the  
23 surface vessels control the location of the surface part of  
24 the pipeline.

25  
26 Step 6. The pull-down and connection process is  
27 repeated for each anchor point along the pipeline until all  
28 anchors are attached to the pipeline.

29  
30 Step 7. The ROV spread is then used to sequentially  
31 pull the pipeline ends into their termination points and the  
32 two end connections secured. If the pipeline route is too  
33 long for a single length of pipeline, then multiple sections  
34

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1 of buoyant pipeline may be connected together to provide the  
2 required length.

3  
4 In the above described preferred embodiment of a method  
5 to install the positively buoyant or neutrally buoyant  
6 pipeline, it is worthwhile to note that all steps of the  
7 installation process are reversible. This allows suction  
8 anchors to be relocated if required, and allows the release  
9 and recovery of the buoyant pipeline for relocation or  
10 repairs should such service ever be required. The anchor  
11 clamps may be repositioned along the pipeline if necessary.  
12

13 This installation process (using several anchor handlers  
14 and ROV's) is inexpensive compared to steel pipeline  
15 installations. The buoyant installation spread cost is  
16 sufficiently low, and the value of the pipeline material is  
17 sufficiently high, so that routine recovery and relocation of  
18 the pipeline is expected to become a common practice. In  
19 fact, this scenario may enable a long-term rental business  
20 where the lines are rented and relocated regularly. This is  
21 the current marketing model for some deepwater mooring  
22 systems, but is a new business model as proposed herein.  
23

24 Composite construction of buoyant flowline may  
25 incorporate a number of additional features. These may  
26 include integral insulation to retain the thermal energy of  
27 the fluids within the pipeline. This insulation serves as  
28 part of the flow assurance strategy for the entire production  
29 system.  
30

31 Other preferred embodiments of the invention include:  
32

33 a. Integral tubular condition monitoring sensors are  
34 incorporated into the tubular walls of the positively buoyant

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 or neutrally buoyant pipelines. These are envisioned as  
2 fiber optic sensors monitoring the distributed stress,  
3 temperature, and/or internal pressure, or any other relevant  
4 physical parameter, in the tubular.

5  
6 b. Integral power lines for providing energy to subsea  
7 installations such as pumps are incorporated into the tubular  
8 walls of the positively buoyant or neutrally buoyant  
9 pipelines.

10  
11 c. Integral electric lines are incorporated into in the  
12 tubular walls of the positively buoyant or neutrally buoyant  
13 pipelines that are designed for heating the internal fluids  
14 within the pipeline.

15  
16 d. Integral control lines for data communication  
17 between the ends of the pipeline are incorporated into the  
18 tubular walls of the positively buoyant or neutrally buoyant  
19 pipelines.

20  
21 e. Integral fluid passages (tubes or hoses) for  
22 hydraulic service or for chemical transport to the far end of  
23 the pipeline are incorporated into the tubular walls of the  
24 positively buoyant pipelines.

25  
26 In various preferred embodiments, some, or all of these  
27 features may be integrated into the walls of the positively  
28 buoyant flowline, or neutrally buoyant flowline, so that it  
29 has sufficient functionality to meet the needs of the field  
30 being developed.

31  
32 In these preferred embodiments, the phrase "flowline"  
33 and "pipeline" may be used interchangeably.

34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**

1           One preferred embodiment utilizes subsea bottom anchored  
2 buoyant pipelines that provides an "arching over terrain  
3 features" capability.

4  
5           Another preferred embodiment utilizes a low cost draw-  
6 down installation process using ROV deployed rigging.

7  
8           Such embodiments provide complete reversible  
9 installation or recovery process. This facilitates repair  
10 for damaged pipelines or for easy relocation to another area.

11  
12           Typical practices in the industry are used as set forth  
13 in the following references, entire copies of which are  
14 incorporated herein by reference:

15  
16           Dendani, H., OTC Paper #15376 entitled "Suction Anchors:  
17 Some critical aspects for their design and installation in  
18 clayey soils", OTC 2003, Houston, Texas, May 2003.

19  
20           Eltaher, A., et. al., OTC Paper #15265 entitled  
21 "Industry Trends for Design of Anchoring Systems for  
22 Deepwater Offshore Structures", OTC 2003, Houston, Texas,  
23 May 2003.

24  
25           In **Figure 49**, all the elements through 928 have been  
26 previously defined in relation to Figure 29. In addition in  
27 Figure 49, subsea wellhead 1550 at location 1554 on the sea  
28 bottom passes crude (oil, gas, and water) production through  
29 the positively buoyant and electrically heated flowline 1558  
30 to the FPSO as a riser. Subsea anchor 1562 supports tether  
31 1566 that is connected to first clamping apparatus 1570.  
32 Subsea anchor 1574 supports tether 1578 that is connected to  
33 second clamping apparatus 1582. The positively buoyant and  
34 electrically heated flowline 1558 passes through the first

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**



1 and second clamping apparatus. The positively buoyant and  
2 electrically heated flowline 1558 has a portion 1586 that  
3 raises upward (or "arcs" upward) under buoyant force between  
4 the first and second clamping apparatus so as to pass over  
5 canyon 1590 in the ocean bottom. A portion of the positively  
6 buoyant and electrically heated flowline 1594 raises towards  
7 the FPSO. As described above, the positively buoyant and  
8 electrically heated flowline may be one piece, or may be  
9 comprised of many sections assembled with the assistance of  
10 one or more ROV's. Electrical power and control signals may  
11 also be passed through the walls of positively buoyant  
12 electrically heated flowline 1558 from the FPSO to the subsea  
13 wellhead 1550 that in turn may be used to provide power  
14 downhole and to monitor production within the well 1598  
15 located below the subsea wellhead 1550.

16  
17 In other embodiments of the invention, no electrical  
18 heating is provided within the positively buoyant flowline.

19  
20 **Figure 50** shows a cross section of a positively buoyant  
21 electrically heated flowline 1602. Many of the elements in  
22 Figure 50 were shown in Figure 20, in Figure 41, and in  
23 Figure 43. The description in relation to Figure 20 shows  
24 syntactic foam materials having silica microspheres as  
25 provided by the Cumming Corporation at [www.emersoncumming.com](http://www.emersoncumming.com)  
26 (now CRP Incorporated, at [www.CRPGroup.co.uk](http://www.CRPGroup.co.uk)) may be used to  
27 adjust the buoyancy of the electrically heated flowline 1602.  
28 As in Figure 20, the density may be chosen to produce  
29 neutrally buoyancy in drilling mud, or in this case, may be  
30 chosen to produce substantially neutrally buoyancy, or  
31 positive buoyancy, in sea water.

32  
33 In view of the above description of preferred  
34 embodiments, a flowline for producing hydrocarbons from a

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 subsea well has been disclosed that is comprised of a  
2 substantially neutrally buoyant tubular composite umbilical  
3 means that possesses electrical heating means within the  
4 tubular walls of the tubular composite umbilical means to  
5 prevent waxes and hydrates from forming within the flowline  
6 and blocking the flowline, whereby the electrical heating  
7 means is comprised of at least one electrical conductor  
8 disposed within the tubular walls of the composite umbilical  
9 means that conducts electrical current that is used to heat  
10 the tubular composite umbilical means, and whereby the  
11 tubular composite umbilical means that contains any produced  
12 hydrocarbons is substantially neutrally buoyant in the sea  
13 water adjacent to the subsea well.  
14

15 In view of the above description of preferred  
16 embodiments, a method of using a flowline for producing  
17 hydrocarbons from a subsea well has been disclosed that is  
18 comprised of a substantially neutrally buoyant tubular  
19 composite umbilical means that possesses electrical heating  
20 means within the tubular walls of the tubular composite  
21 umbilical means to prevent waxes and hydrates from forming  
22 within the flowline and blocking the flowline, whereby the  
23 electrical heating means is comprised of at least one  
24 electrical conductor disposed within the tubular walls of the  
25 composite umbilical means that conducts electrical current  
26 that is used to heat the tubular composite umbilical means,  
27 and whereby the tubular composite umbilical means that  
28 contains any produced hydrocarbons is substantially neutrally  
29 buoyant in the sea water adjacent to said subsea well.  
30

31 In view of the above described preferred embodiments, a  
32 flowline has been disclosed for producing hydrocarbons from a  
33 subsea well that is comprised of a substantially neutrally  
34 buoyant tubular composite umbilical means, whereby the

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1 tubular composite umbilical means that contains any produced  
2 hydrocarbons is substantially neutrally buoyant in the sea  
3 water adjacent to the subsea well.  
4

5 In view of the above described preferred embodiments,  
6 a flowline has been disclosed for producing hydrocarbons from  
7 a subsea well that is comprised of a positively buoyant  
8 tubular composite umbilical means that possesses electrical  
9 heating means within the tubular walls of the tubular  
10 composite umbilical means to prevent waxes and hydrates from  
11 forming within the flowline and blocking the flowline,  
12 whereby the electrical heating means is comprised of at least  
13 one electrical conductor disposed within the tubular walls of  
14 the composite umbilical means that conducts electrical  
15 current that is used to heat the tubular composite umbilical  
16 means, and whereby the tubular composite umbilical means that  
17 contains any produced hydrocarbons is positively buoyant in  
18 the sea water adjacent to the subsea well.  
19

20 In view of the above description of preferred  
21 embodiments, a method of using a flowline for producing  
22 hydrocarbons from a subsea well has been disclosed that is  
23 comprised of a positively buoyant tubular composite umbilical  
24 means that possesses electrical heating means within the  
25 tubular walls of the tubular composite umbilical means to  
26 prevent waxes and hydrates from forming within the flowline  
27 and blocking the flowline, whereby the electrical heating  
28 means is comprised of at least one electrical conductor  
29 disposed within the tubular walls of the composite umbilical  
30 means that conducts electrical current that is used to heat  
31 the tubular composite umbilical means, and whereby the  
32 tubular composite umbilical means that contains any produced  
33 hydrocarbons is positively buoyant in the sea water adjacent  
34 to the subsea well.

**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
Rig-3

1           And finally, in view of the above described preferred  
2           embodiments, a flowline for producing hydrocarbons from a  
3           subsea well has been disclosed that is comprised of a  
4           positively buoyant tubular composite umbilical means, whereby  
5           the tubular composite umbilical means that contains any  
6           produced hydrocarbons is positively buoyant in the sea water  
7           adjacent to the subsea well.

8  
9           It is further evident from the above description that  
10          the flowlines may be used for transporting fluids between any  
11          two points. For example, one point may be on the ocean  
12          bottom, and another point may be on another portion of the  
13          ocean bottom or on the surface of the ocean.

14  
15          It is further evident from the above description that  
16          the electrically heated flowlines may be used to elevate the  
17          temperature of the fluids being transported within the  
18          flowlines. Such a temperature elevation reduces the  
19          viscosity of the transported fluids, thus requiring less  
20          energy to transport the fluids through the flowlines. The  
21          electrically heated flowlines are an example of a means to  
22          maintain transported fluids at an elevated temperature.

23  
24          While the above description contains many specificities,  
25          these should not be construed as limitations on the scope of  
26          the invention, but rather as exemplification of preferred  
27          embodiments thereto. As have been briefly described, there  
28          are many possible variations. Accordingly, the scope of the  
29          invention should be determined not only by the embodiments  
30          illustrated, but by the appended claims and their legal  
31          equivalents.

32  
33  
34  
**"SUBSTANTIALLY NEUTRALLY BUOYANT AND  
POSITIVELY BUOYANT ELECTRICALLY HEATED FLOWLINES..."**  
**Rig-3**